Lecture Notes

# Quantum Information Theory 

Renato Renner

August 16, 2011

## 1 Introduction

The very process of doing physics is to acquire information about the world around us. At the same time, the storage and processing of information is necessarily a physical process. It is thus not surprising that physics and the theory of information are inherently connected. ${ }^{1}$ Quantum information theory is an interdisciplinary research area whose goal is to explore this connection.
As the name indicates, the information carriers in quantum information theory are quantum-mechanical systems (e.g., the spin of a single electron). This is in contrast to classical information theory where information is assumed to be represented by systems that are accurately characterized by the laws of classical mechanics and electrodynamics (e.g., a classical computer, or simply a piece of paper). Because any such classical system can in principle be described in the language of quantum mechanics, classical information theory is a (practically significant) special case of quantum information theory.
The course starts with a quick introduction to classical probability and information theory. Many of the relevant concepts, e.g., the notion of entropy as a measure of uncertainty, can already be defined in the purely classical case. I thus consider this classical part as a good preparation as well as a source of intuition for the more general quantum-mechanical treatment.
We will then move on to the quantum setting, where we will spend a considerable amount of time to introduce a convenient framework for representing and manipulating quantum states and quantum operations. This framework will be the prerequisite for formulating and studying typical information-theoretic problems such as information storage and transmission (with possibly noisy devices). Furthermore, we will learn in what sense information represented by quantum systems is different from information that is represented classically. Finally, we will have a look at applications such as quantum key distribution.

I would like to emphasize that it is not an intention of this course to give a complete treatment of quantum information theory. Instead, the goal is to focus on certain key concepts and to study them in more detail. For further reading, I recommend the standard textbook by Nielsen and Chuang [6]. Also, I would like to mention the course on quantum computation [11] by Stefan Wolf (Computer Science Department). Wolf's course is somewhat complementary in the sense that it focuses on quantum computation, while this course is on quantum information.

[^0]
## 2 Probability Theory

Information theory is largely based on probability theory. Therefore, before introducing information-theoretic concepts, we need to recall some key notions of probability theory. The following section is, however, not thought as an introduction to probability theory. Rather, its main purpose is to summarize some basic facts as well as the notation we are going to use in this course.

### 2.1 What is probability?

This is actually a rather philosophical question and it is not the topic of this course to answer it. ${ }^{1}$ Nevertheless, it might be useful to spend some thoughts about how probabilities are related to actual physical quantities.

For the purpose of this course, it might make sense to take a Bayesian point of view, meaning that probability distributions are generally interpreted as a state of knowledge. To illustrate the Bayesian approach, consider a game where a quizmaster hides a prize behind one of three doors, and where the task of a candidate is to find the prize. Let $X$ be the number of the door ( 1,2 , or 3 ) which hides the prize. Obviously, as long as the candidate does not get any additional information, each of the doors is equally likely to hide the prize. Hence, the probability distribution $P_{X}^{\text {cand }}$ that the candidate would assign to $X$ is uniform,

$$
P_{X}^{\text {cand }}(1)=P_{X}^{\text {cand }}(2)=P_{X}^{\text {cand }}(3)=1 / 3
$$

On the other hand, the quizmaster knows where he has hidden the prize, so he would assign a deterministic value to $X$. For example, if the prize is behind door 1, the probability distribution $P^{\text {mast }}$ the quizmaster would assign to $X$ has the form

$$
P_{X}^{\text {mast }}(1)=1 \quad \text { and } \quad P_{X}^{\text {mast }}(2)=P_{X}^{\text {mast }}(3)=0 .
$$

The crucial thing to note here is that, although the distributions $P_{X}^{\text {cand }}$ and $P_{X}^{\text {mast }}$ are referring to the same physical value $X$, they are different because they correspond to different states of knowledge.

We could extend this example arbitrarily. For instance, the quizmaster could open one of the doors, say 3 , to reveal that the prize is not behind it. This additional information, of course, changes the state of knowledge of the candidate, resulting in yet another probability distribution $P_{X}^{\text {cand }}{ }^{\prime}$ associated with $X,{ }^{2}$

[^1]$$
P_{X}^{\text {cand }}(1)=P_{X}^{\text {cand }}(2)=1 / 2 \quad \text { and } \quad P_{X}^{\text {cand }^{\prime}}(3)=0 .
$$

When interpreting a probability distribution as a state of knowledge and, hence, as subjective quantity, we need to carefully specify whose state of knowledge we are referring to. This is particularly relevant for the analysis of information-theoretic settings, which usually involve more than one party. For example, in a communication scenario, we might have a sender who intends to transmit a message $M$ to a receiver. Clearly, before $M$ is sent, the sender and the receiver have different knowledge about $M$ and, consequently, would assign different probability distributions to $M$. In the following, when describing such settings, we will typically understand all distributions as states of knowledge of an outside observer.

### 2.2 Definition of probability spaces and random variables

The concept of random variables is important in both physics and information theory. Roughly speaking, one can think of a random variable as the state of a classical probabilistic system. Hence, in classical information theory, it is natural to think of data as being represented by random variables.
In this section, we define random variables and explain a few related concepts. For completeness, we first give the general mathematical definition based on probability spaces. Later, we will restrict to discrete random variables (i.e., random variables that only take countably many values). These are easier to handle than general random variables but still sufficient for our information-theoretic considerations.

### 2.2.1 Probability space

A probability space is a triple $(\Omega, \mathcal{E}, P)$, where $(\Omega, \mathcal{E})$ is a measurable space, called sample space, and $P$ is a probability measure. The measurable space consists of a set $\Omega$ and a $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{E}$ of subsets of $\Omega$, called events.

By definition, the $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{E}$ must contain at least one event, and be closed under complements and countable unions. That is, (i) $\mathcal{E} \neq \emptyset$, (ii) if $E$ is an event then so is its complement $E^{c}:=\Omega \backslash E$, and (iii) if $\left(E_{i}\right)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a family of events then $\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} E_{i}$ is an event. In particular, $\Omega$ and $\emptyset$ are events, called the certain event and the impossible event.

The probability measure $P$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{E})$ is a function

$$
P: \quad \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

that assigns to each event $E \in \mathcal{E}$ a nonnegative real number $P[E]$, called the probability of $E$. It must satisfy the probability axioms $P[\Omega]=1$ and $P\left[\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} E_{i}\right]=\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} P\left[E_{i}\right]$ for any family $\left(E_{i}\right)_{i n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of pairwise disjoint events.

### 2.2.2 Random variables

Let $(\Omega, \mathcal{E}, P)$ be a probability space and let $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{F})$ be a measurable space. A random variable $X$ is a function from $\Omega$ to $\mathcal{X}$ which is measurable with respect to the $\sigma$-algebras
$\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$. This means that the preimage of any $F \in \mathcal{F}$ is an event, i.e., $X^{-1}(F) \in \mathcal{E}$. The probability measure $P$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{E})$ induces a probability measure $P_{X}$ on the measurable space $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{F})$, which is also called range of $X$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X}[F]:=P\left[X^{-1}(F)\right] \quad \forall F \in \mathcal{F} . \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

A pair ( $X, Y$ ) of random variables can obviously be seen as a new random variable. More precisely, if $X$ and $Y$ are random variables with range $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{F})$ and $(\mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{G})$, respectively, then $(X, Y)$ is the random variable with range $(\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{G})$ defined by ${ }^{3}$

$$
(X, Y): \quad \omega \mapsto X(\omega) \times Y(\omega) .
$$

We will typically write $P_{X Y}$ to denote the joint probability measure $P_{(X, Y)}$ on $(\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{G})$ induced by $(X, Y)$. This convention can, of course, be extended to more than two random variables in a straightforward way. For example, we will write $P_{X_{1} \cdots X_{n}}$ for the probability measure induced by an $n$-tuple of random variables $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.
In a context involving only finitely many random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$, it is usually sufficient to specify the joint probability measure $P_{X_{1} \cdots X_{n}}$, while the underlying probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{E}, P)$ is irrelevant. In fact, as long as we are only interested in events defined in terms of the random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ (see Section 2.2 .3 below), we can without loss of generality identify the sample space $(\Omega, \mathcal{E})$ with the range of the tuple $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ and define the probability measure $P$ to be equal to $P_{X_{1} \cdots X_{n}}$.

### 2.2.3 Notation for events

Events are often defined in terms of random variables. For example, if the range of $X$ is (a subset of) the set of real numbers $\mathbb{R}$ then $E:=\left\{\omega \in \Omega: X(\omega)>x_{0}\right\}$ is the event that $X$ takes a value larger than $x_{0}$. To denote such events, we will usually drop $\omega$, i.e., we simply write $E=\left\{X>x_{0}\right\}$. If the event is given as an argument to a function, we also omit the curly brackets. For instance, we write $P\left[X>x_{0}\right]$ instead of $P\left[\left\{X>x_{0}\right\}\right]$ to denote the probability of the event $\left\{X>x_{0}\right\}$.

### 2.2.4 Conditioning on events

Let $(\Omega, \mathcal{E}, P)$ be a probability space. Any event $E^{\prime} \in \mathcal{E}$ such that $P\left(E^{\prime}\right)>0$ gives rise to a new probability measure $P\left[\cdot \mid E^{\prime}\right]$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{E})$ defined by

$$
P\left[E \mid E^{\prime}\right]:=\frac{P\left[E \cap E^{\prime}\right]}{P\left[E^{\prime}\right]} \quad \forall E \in \mathcal{E} .
$$

$P\left[E \mid E^{\prime}\right]$ is called the probability of $E$ conditioned on $E^{\prime}$ and can be interpreted as the probability that the event $E$ occurs if we already know that the event $E^{\prime}$ has occurred. In particular, if $E$ and $E^{\prime}$ are mutually independent, i.e., $P\left[E \cap E^{\prime}\right]=P[E] P\left[E^{\prime}\right]$, then $P\left[E \mid E^{\prime}\right]=P[E]$.

[^2]Similarly, we can define $P_{X \mid E^{\prime}}$ as the probability measure of a random variable $X$ conditioned on $E^{\prime}$. Analogously to (2.1), it is the probability measure induced by $P\left[\cdot \mid E^{\prime}\right]$, i.e.,

$$
P_{X \mid E^{\prime}}[F]:=P\left[X^{-1}(F) \mid E^{\prime}\right] \quad \forall F \in \mathcal{F}
$$

### 2.3 Probability theory with discrete random variables

### 2.3.1 Discrete random variables

In the remainder of this script, if not stated otherwise, all random variables are assumed to be discrete. This means that their range $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{F})$ consists of a countably infinite or even finite set $\mathcal{X}$. In addition, we will assume that the $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{F}$ is the power set of $\mathcal{X}$, i.e., $\mathcal{F}:=\{F \subseteq \mathcal{X}\} .{ }^{4}$ Furthermore, we call $\mathcal{X}$ the alphabet of $X$. The probability measure $P_{X}$ is then defined for any singleton set $\{x\}$. Setting $P_{X}(x):=P_{X}[\{x\}]$, we can interpret $P_{X}$ as a probability mass function, i.e., a positive function

$$
P_{X}: \quad \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

that satisfies the normalization condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} P_{X}(x)=1 \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

More generally, for an event $E^{\prime}$ with $P\left[E^{\prime}\right]>0$, the probability mass function of $X$ conditioned on $E^{\prime}$ is given by $P_{X \mid E^{\prime}}(x):=P_{X \mid E^{\prime}}[\{x\}]$, and also satisfies the normalization condition (2.2).

### 2.3.2 Marginals and conditional distributions

Although the following definitions and statements apply to arbitrary $n$-tuples of random variables, we will formulate them only for pairs $(X, Y)$ in order to keep the notation simple. In particular, it suffices to specify a bipartite probability distribution $P_{X Y}$, i.e., a positive function on $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$ satisfying the normalization condition (2.2), where $\mathcal{X}$ and $\mathcal{Y}$ are the alphabets of $X$ and $Y$, respectively. The extension to arbitrary $n$-tuples is straightforward. ${ }^{5}$

Given $P_{X Y}$, we call $P_{X}$ and $P_{Y}$ the marginal distributions. It is easy to verify that

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X}(x)=\sum_{y \in \mathcal{Y}} P_{X Y}(x, y) \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{X} \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and likewise for $P_{Y}$. Furthermore, for any $y \in \mathcal{Y}$ with $P_{Y}(y)>0$, the distribution $P_{X \mid Y=y}$ of $X$ conditioned on the event $Y=y$ obeys

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X \mid Y=y}(x)=\frac{P_{X Y}(x, y)}{P_{Y}(y)} \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{X} . \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^3]
### 2.3.3 Special distributions

Certain distributions are important enough to be given a name. We call $P_{X}$ flat if all non-zero probabilities are equal, i.e.,

$$
P_{X}(x) \in\{0, q\} \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{X}
$$

for some $q \in[0,1]$. Because of the normalization condition (2.2), we have $q=\frac{1}{\left|\operatorname{supp} P_{X}\right|}$, where $\operatorname{supp} P_{X}:=\left\{x \in \mathcal{X}: P_{X}(x)>0\right\}$ is the support of the function $P_{X}$. Furthermore, if $P_{X}$ is flat and has no zero probabilities, i.e.,

$$
P_{X}(x)=\frac{1}{|\mathcal{X}|} \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{X}
$$

we call it uniform.

### 2.3.4 Independence and Markov chains

Two discrete random variables $X$ and $Y$ are said to be mutually independent if the events $\{X=x\}$ and $\{Y=y\}$ are mutually independent for any $(x, y) \in \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$. Their joint probability mass function then satisfies $P_{X Y}=P_{X} \times P_{Y} .{ }^{6}$
Related to this is the notion of Markov chains. A sequence of random variables $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$ is said to have the Markov property, denoted $X_{1} \leftrightarrow X_{2} \leftrightarrow \cdots \leftrightarrow X_{n}$, if for all $i \in$ $\{1, \ldots, n-1\}$

$$
P_{X_{i+1} \mid X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{i}=x_{i}}=P_{X_{i+1} \mid X_{i}=x_{i}} \quad \forall x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i} .
$$

This expresses the fact that, given any fixed value of $X_{i}$, the random variable $X_{i+1}$ is completely independent of all previous random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{i-1}$. In particular, $X_{i+1}$ can be computed given only $X_{i}$.

### 2.3.5 Functions of random variables, expectation values, and Jensen's inequality

Let $X$ be a random variable with alphabet $\mathcal{X}$ and let $f$ be a function from $\mathcal{X}$ to $\mathcal{Y}$. We denote by $f(X)$ the random variable defined by the concatenation $f \circ X$. Obviously, $f(X)$ has alphabet $\mathcal{Y}$ and, in the discrete case we consider here, the corresponding probability mass function $P_{f(X)}$ is given by

$$
P_{f(X)}(y)=\sum_{x \in f^{-1}(\{y\})} P_{X}(x) .
$$

For a random variable $X$ whose alphabet $\mathcal{X}$ is a module over the reals $\mathbb{R}$ (i.e., there is a notion of addition and multiplication with reals), we define the expectation value of $X$ by

$$
\langle X\rangle_{P_{X}}:=\sum_{x \in X} P_{X}(x) x .
$$

[^4]If the distribution $P_{X}$ is clear from the context, we sometimes omit the subscript.
For a convex real function $f$ on a convex set $\mathcal{X}$, the expectation values of $X$ and $f(X)$ are related by Jensen's inequality

$$
\langle f(X)\rangle \geq f(\langle X\rangle)
$$

The inequality is essentially a direct consequence of the definition of convexity (see Fig. 2.1).


Figure 2.1: Jensen's inequality for a convex function

### 2.3.6 Trace distance

Let $P$ and $Q$ be two probability mass functions ${ }^{7}$ on an alphabet $\mathcal{X}$. The trace distance $\delta$ between $P$ and $Q$ is defined by

$$
\delta(P, Q)=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}}|P(x)-Q(x)|
$$

In the literature, the trace distance is also called statistical distance, variational distance, or Kolmogorov distance. ${ }^{8}$ It is easy to verify that $\delta$ is indeed a metric, that is, it is symmetric, nonnegative, zero if and only if $P=Q$, and it satisfies the triangle inequality. Furthermore, $\delta(P, Q) \leq 1$ with equality if and only if $P$ and $Q$ have distinct support.

Because $P$ and $Q$ satisfy the normalization condition (2.2), the trace distance can equivalently be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(P, Q)=1-\sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \min [P(x), Q(x)] \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The trace distance between the probability mass functions $Q_{X}$ and $Q_{X^{\prime}}$ of two random variables $X$ and $X^{\prime}$ has a simple interpretation. It can be seen as the minimum probability that $X$ and $X^{\prime}$ take different values.

[^5]Lemma 2.3.1. Let $Q_{X}$ and $Q_{X^{\prime}}$ be probability mass functions on $\mathcal{X}$. Then

$$
\delta\left(Q_{X}, Q_{X^{\prime}}\right)=\min _{P_{X X^{\prime}}} P_{X X^{\prime}}\left[X \neq X^{\prime}\right]
$$

where the minimum ranges over all joint probability mass functions $P_{X X^{\prime}}$ with marginals $P_{X}=Q_{X}$ and $P_{X^{\prime}}=Q_{X^{\prime}}$.

Proof. To prove the inequality $\delta\left(Q_{X}, Q_{X^{\prime}}\right) \leq \min _{P_{X X^{\prime}}} P_{X X^{\prime}}\left[X \neq X^{\prime}\right]$, we use (2.5) and the fact that, for any joint probability mass function $P_{X X^{\prime}}, \min \left[P_{X}(x), P_{X^{\prime}}(x)\right] \geq P_{X X^{\prime}}(x, x)$, which gives

$$
\delta\left(P_{X}, P_{X^{\prime}}\right)=1-\sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \min \left[P_{X}(x), P_{X^{\prime}}(x)\right] \leq 1-\sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} P_{X X^{\prime}}(x, x)=P_{X X^{\prime}}\left[X \neq X^{\prime}\right] .
$$

We thus have $\delta\left(P_{X}, P_{X^{\prime}}\right) \leq P_{X X^{\prime}}\left[X \neq X^{\prime}\right]$, for any probability mass function $P_{X X^{\prime}}$. Taking the minimum over all $P_{X X^{\prime}}$ with $P_{X}=Q_{X}$ and $P_{X^{\prime}}=Q_{X^{\prime}}$ gives the desired inequality.

The proof of the opposite inequality is given in the exercises.
An important property of the trace distance is that it can only decrease under the operation of taking marginals.

Lemma 2.3.2. For any two density mass functions $P_{X Y}$ and $Q_{X Y}$,

$$
\delta\left(P_{X Y}, Q_{X Y}\right) \geq \delta\left(P_{X}, Q_{X}\right)
$$

Proof. Applying the triangle inequality for the absolute value, we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \sum_{x, y}\left|P_{X Y}(x, y)-Q_{X Y}(x, y)\right| & \geq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{x}\left|\sum_{y} P_{X Y}(x, y)-Q_{X Y}(x, y)\right| \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{x}\left|P_{X}(x)-Q_{X}(x)\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

where the second equality is (2.3). The assertion then follows from the definition of the trace distance.

### 2.3.7 l.i.d. distributions and the law of large numbers

An $n$-tuple of random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ with alphabet $\mathcal{X}$ is said to be independent and identically distributed (i.i.d.) if their joint probability mass function has the form

$$
P_{X_{1} \cdots X_{n}}=P_{X}^{\times n}:=P_{X} \times \cdots \times P_{X} .
$$

The i.i.d. property thus characterizes situations where a certain process is repeated $n$ times independently. In the context of information theory, the i.i.d. property is often used to describe the statistics of noise, e.g., in repeated uses of a communication channel (see Section 3.2).

The law of large numbers characterizes the "typical behavior" of real-valued i.i.d. random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ in the limit of large $n$. It usually comes in two versions, called the weak and the strong law of large numbers. As the name suggests, the latter implies the first.
Let $\mu=\left\langle X_{i}\right\rangle$ be the expectation value of $X_{i}$ (which, by the i.i.d. assumption, is the same for all $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ ), and let

$$
Z_{n}:=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}
$$

be the sample mean. Then, according to the weak law of large numbers, the probability that $Z_{n}$ is $\varepsilon$-close to $\mu$ for any positive $\varepsilon$ converges to one, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} P\left[\left|Z_{n}-\mu\right|<\varepsilon\right]=1 \quad \forall \varepsilon>0 \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The weak law of large numbers will be sufficient for our purposes. However, for completeness, we mention the strong law of large numbers which says that $Z_{n}$ converges to $\mu$ with probability 1 ,

$$
P\left[\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} Z_{n}=\mu\right]=1
$$

### 2.3.8 Channels

A channel $\mathbf{p}$ is a probabilistic mapping that assigns to each value of an input alphabet $\mathcal{X}$ a value of the output alphabet. Formally, $\mathbf{p}$ is a function

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{p}: \quad \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y} & \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{+} \\
(x, y) & \mapsto \mathbf{p}(y \mid x)
\end{aligned}
$$

such that $\mathbf{p}(\cdot \mid x)$ is a probability mass function for any $x \in \mathcal{X}$.
Given a random variable $X$ with alphabet $\mathcal{X}$, a channel $\mathbf{p}$ from $\mathcal{X}$ to $\mathcal{Y}$ naturally defines a new random variable $Y$ via the joint probability mass function $P_{X Y}$ given by ${ }^{9}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X Y}(x, y):=P_{X}(x) \mathbf{p}(y \mid x) . \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note also that channels can be seen as generalizations of functions. Indeed, if $f$ is a function from $\mathcal{X}$ to $\mathcal{Y}$, its description as a channel $\mathbf{p}$ is given by

$$
\mathbf{p}(y \mid x)=\delta_{y, f(x)} .
$$

Channels can be seen as abstractions of any (classical) physical device that takes an input $X$ and outputs $Y$. A typical example for such a device is, of course, a communication channel, e.g., an optical fiber, where $X$ is the input provided by a sender and where $Y$ is the (possibly noisy) version of $X$ delivered to a receiver. A practically relevant question

[^6]then is how much information one can transmit reliably over such a channel, using an appropriate encoding.

But channels do not only carry information over space, but also over time. Typical examples are memory devices, e.g., a hard drive or a CD (where one wants to model the errors introduced between storage and reading out of data). Here, the question is how much redundancy we need to introduce in the stored data in order to correct these errors.
The notion of channels is illustrated by the following two examples.


Figure 2.2: Example 1. A reliable channel

Example 2.3.3. The channel depicted in Fig. 2.2 maps the input 0 with equal probability to either 0 or 1 ; the input 1 is always mapped to 2 . The channel has the property that its input is uniquely determined by its output. As we shall see later, such a channel would allow to reliably transmit one classical bit of information.


Figure 2.3: Example 2. An unreliable channel

Example 2.3.4. The channel shown in Fig. 2.3 maps each possible input with equal probability to either 0 or 1 . The output is thus completely independent of the input. Such a channel is obviously not useful to transmit information.
The notion of i.i.d. random variables naturally translates to channels. A channel $\mathbf{p}_{n}$ from $\mathcal{X} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{X}$ to $\mathcal{Y} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{Y}$ is said to be $i . i . d$. if it can be written as $\mathbf{p}_{n}=\mathbf{p}^{\times n}:=\mathbf{p} \times \cdots \times \mathbf{p}$.

## 3 Information Theory

### 3.1 Quantifying information

The main object of interest in information theory, of course, is information and the way it is processed. The quantification of information thus plays a central role. The aim of this section is to introduce some notions and techniques that are needed for the quantitative study of classical information, i.e., information that can be represented by the state of a classical (in contrast to quantum) system.

### 3.1.1 Approaches to define information and entropy

Measures of information and measures of uncertainty, also called entropy measures, are closely related. In fact, the information contained in a message $X$ can be seen as the amount by which our uncertainty (measured in terms of entropy) decreases when we learn $X$.
There are, however, a variety of approaches to defining entropy measures. The decision what approach to take mainly depends on the type of questions we would like to answer. Let us thus consider a few examples.

Example 3.1.1 (Data transmission). Given a (possibly noisy) communication channel connecting a sender and a receiver (e.g., an optical fiber), we are interested in the time it takes to reliably transmit a certain document (e.g., the content of a textbook).

Example 3.1.2 (Data storage). Given certain data (e.g., a movie), we want to determine the minimum space (e.g., on a hard drive) needed to store it.

The latter question is related to data compression, where the task is to find a spacesaving representation $Z$ of given data $X$. In some sense, this corresponds to finding the shortest possible description of $X$. An elegant way to make this more precise is to view the description of $X$ as an algorithm that generates $X$. Applied to the problem of data storage, this would mean that, instead of storing data $X$ directly, one would store an (as small as possible) algorithm $Z$ which can reproduce $X$.

The definition of algorithmic entropy, also known as Kolmogorov complexity, is exactly based on this idea. The algorithmic entropy of $X$ is defined as the minimum length of an algorithm that generates $X$. For example, a bitstring $X=00 \cdots 0$ consisting of $n \gg 1$ zeros has small algorithmic entropy because it can be generated by a short program (the program that simply outputs a sequence of zeros). The same is true if $X$ consists of the first $n$ digits of $\pi$, because there is a short algorithm that computes the circular constant $\pi$. In contrast, if $X$ is a sequence of $n$ bits chosen at random, its algorithmic entropy will, with high probability, be roughly equal to $n$. This is because the shortest program
generating the exact sequence of bits $X$ is, most likely, simply the program that has the whole sequence already stored. ${ }^{1}$

Despite the elegance of its definition, the algorithmic entropy has a fundamental disadvantage when being used as a measure for uncertainty: it is not computable. This means that there cannot exist a method (e.g., a computer program) that estimates the algorithmic complexity of a given string $X$. This deficiency as well as its implications ${ }^{2}$ render the algorithmic complexity unsuitable as a measure of entropy for most practical applications.
In this course, we will consider a different approach which is based on ideas developed in thermodynamics. The approach has been proposed in 1948 by Shannon [8] and, since then, has proved highly successful, with numerous applications in various scientific disciplines (including, of course, physics). It can also be seen as the theoretical foundation of modern information and communication technology. Today, Shannon's theory is viewed as the standard approach to information theory.
In contrast to the algorithmic approach described above, where the entropy is defined as a function of the actual data $X$, the information measures used in Shannon's theory depend on the probability distribution of the data. More precisely, the entropy of a value $X$ is a measure for the likelihood that a particular value occurs. Applied to the above compression problem, this means that one needs to assign a probability mass function to the data to be compressed. The method used for compression might then be optimized for the particular probability mass function assigned to the data.

### 3.1.2 Entropy of events

We take an axiomatic approach to motivate the definition of the Shannon entropy and related quantities. In a first step, we will think of the entropy as a property of events $E$. More precisely, given a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{E}, P)$, we consider a function $H$ that assigns to each event $E$ a real value $H(E)$,

$$
\begin{array}{rlll}
H: & \mathcal{E} & \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \cup\{\infty\} \\
& E & \mapsto & H(E) .
\end{array}
$$

For the following, we assume that the events are defined on a probability space with probability measure $P$. The function $H$ should then satisfy the following properties.

1. Independence of the representation: $H(E)$ only depends on the probability $P[E]$ of the event $E$.
2. Continuity: $H$ is continuous in the probability measure $P$ (relative to the topology induced by the trace distance).
3. Additivity: $H\left(E \cap E^{\prime}\right)=H(E)+H\left(E^{\prime}\right)$ for two independent events $E$ and $E^{\prime}$.
4. Normalization: $H(E)=1$ for $E$ with $P[E]=\frac{1}{2}$.
[^7]The axioms appear natural if we think of $H$ as a measure of uncertainty. Indeed, Axiom 3 reflects the idea that our total uncertainty about two independent events is simply the sum of the uncertainty about the individual events. We also note that the normalization imposed by Axiom 4 can be chosen arbitrarily; the convention, however, is to assign entropy 1 to the event corresponding to the outcome of a fair coin flip.

The axioms uniquely define the function $H$.
Lemma 3.1.3. The function $H$ satisfies the above axioms if and only if it has the form

$$
H: \quad E \longmapsto-\log _{2} P[E] .
$$

Proof. It is straightforward that $H$ as defined in the lemma satisfies all the axioms. It thus remains to show that the definition is unique. For this, we make the ansatz

$$
H(E)=f\left(-\log _{2} P[E]\right)
$$

where $f$ is an arbitrary function from $\mathbb{R}^{+} \cup\{\infty\}$ to $\mathbb{R} \cup\{\infty\}$. We note that, apart from taking into account the first axiom, this is no restriction of generality, because any possible function of $P[E]$ can be written in this form.
From the continuity axiom, it follows that $f$ must be continuous. Furthermore, inserting the additivity axiom for events $E$ and $E^{\prime}$ with probabilities $p$ and $p^{\prime}$, respectively, gives

$$
f\left(-\log _{2} p\right)+f\left(-\log _{2} p^{\prime}\right)=f\left(-\log _{2} p p^{\prime}\right) .
$$

Setting $a:=-\log _{2} p$ and $a^{\prime}:=-\log _{2} p^{\prime}$, this can be rewritten as

$$
f(a)+f\left(a^{\prime}\right)=f\left(a+a^{\prime}\right) .
$$

Together with the continuity axiom, we conclude that $f$ is linear, i.e., $f(x)=\gamma x$ for some $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$. The normalization axiom then implies that $\gamma=1$.

### 3.1.3 Entropy of random variables

We are now ready to define entropy measures for random variables. Analogously to the entropy of an event $E$, which only depends on the probability $P[E]$ of the event, the entropy of a random variable $X$ only depends on the probability mass function $P_{X}$.

We start with the most standard measure in classical information theory, the Shannon entropy, in the following denoted by $H$. Let $X$ be a random variable with alphabet $\mathcal{X}$ and let $h(x)$ be the entropy of the event $E_{x}:=\{X=x\}$, for any $x \in \mathcal{X}$, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
h(x):=H\left(E_{x}\right)=-\log _{2} P_{X}(x) . \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the Shannon entropy is defined as the expectation value of $h(x)$, i.e.,

$$
H(X):=\langle h(X)\rangle=-\sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} P_{X}(x) \log _{2} P_{X}(x)
$$

If the probability measure $P$ is unclear from the context, we will include it in the notation as a subscript, i.e., we write $H(X)_{P}$.

Similarly, the min-entropy, denoted $H_{\min }$, is defined as the minimum entropy $H\left(E_{x}\right)$ of the events $E_{x}$, i.e.,

$$
H_{\min }(X):=\min _{x \in \mathcal{X}} h(x)=-\log _{2} \max _{x \in \mathcal{X}} P_{X}(x) .
$$

A slightly different entropy measure is the max-entropy, denoted $H_{\max }$. Despite the similarity of its name to the above measure, the definition does not rely on the entropy of events, but rather on the cardinality of the support $\operatorname{supp} P_{X}:=\left\{x \in \mathcal{X}: P_{X}(x)>0\right\}$ of $P_{X}$,

$$
H_{\max }(X):=\log _{2}\left|\operatorname{supp} P_{X}\right|
$$

It is easy to verify that the entropies defined above are related by

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{\min }(X) \leq H(X) \leq H_{\max }(X) \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with equality if the probability mass function $P_{X}$ is flat. Furthermore, they have various properties in common. The following holds for $H, H_{\min }$, and $H_{\max }$; to keep the notation simple, however, we only write $H$.

1. $H$ is invariant under permutations of the elements, i.e., $H(X)=H(\pi(X))$, for any permutation $\pi$.
2. $H$ is nonnegative. ${ }^{3}$
3. $H$ is upper bounded by the logarithm of the alphabet size, i.e., $H(X) \leq \log _{2}|\mathcal{X}|$.
4. $H$ equals zero if and only if exactly one of the entries of $P_{X}$ equals one, i.e., if $\left|\operatorname{supp} P_{X}\right|=1$.

### 3.1.4 Conditional entropy

In information theory, one typically wants to quantify the uncertainty about some data $X$, given that one already has information $Y$. To capture such situations, we need to generalize the entropy measures introduced in Section 3.1.3.

Let $X$ and $Y$ be random variables with alphabet $\mathcal{X}$ and $\mathcal{Y}$, respectively, and define, analogously to (3.1),

$$
\begin{equation*}
h(x \mid y):=-\log _{2} P_{X \mid Y=y}(x), \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any $x \in \mathcal{X}$ and $y \in \mathcal{Y}$. Then the Shannon entropy of $X$ conditioned on $Y$ is again defined as an expectation value,

$$
H(X \mid Y):=\langle h(X \mid Y)\rangle=-\sum_{\substack{x \in \mathcal{X} \\ y \in \mathcal{Y}}} P_{X Y}(x, y) \log _{2} P_{X \mid Y=y}(x)
$$

[^8]For the definition of the min-entropy of $X$ given $Y$, the expectation value is replaced by a minimum, i.e.,

$$
H_{\min }(X \mid Y):=\min _{\substack{x \in \mathcal{X} \\ y \in \mathcal{Y}}} h(x \mid y)=-\log _{2} \max _{\substack{x \in \mathcal{X} \\ y \in \mathcal{Y}}} P_{X \mid Y=y}(x)
$$

Finally, the max-entropy of $X$ given $Y$ is defined by

$$
H_{\max }(X \mid Y):=\max _{y \in \mathcal{Y}} \log _{2}\left|\operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}\right|
$$

The conditional entropies $H, H_{\min }$, and $H_{\max }$ satisfy the rules listed in Section 3.1.3. Furthermore, the entropies can only decrease when conditioning on an additional random variable $Z$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(X \mid Y) \geq H(X \mid Y Z) \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This relation is also known as strong subadditivity and we will prove it in the more general quantum case.
Finally, it is straightforward to verify that the Shannon entropy $H$ satisfies the chain rule

$$
H(X \mid Y Z)=H(X Y \mid Z)-H(Y \mid Z)
$$

In particular, if we omit the random variable $Z$, we get

$$
H(X \mid Y)=H(X Y)-H(Y)
$$

that is, the uncertainty of $X$ given $Y$ can be seen as the uncertainty about the pair $(X, Y)$ minus the uncertainty about $Y$. We note here that a slightly modified version of the chain rule also holds for $H_{\min }$ and $H_{\max }$, but we will not go further into this.

### 3.1.5 Mutual information

Let $X$ and $Y$ be two random variables. The (Shannon) mutual information between $X$ and $Y$, denoted $I(X: Y)$ is defined as the amount by which the Shannon entropy on $X$ decreases when one learns $Y$,

$$
I(X: Y):=H(X)-H(X \mid Y)
$$

More generally, given an additional random variable $Z$, the (Shannon) mutual information between $X$ and $Y$ conditioned on $Z, I(X: Y \mid Z)$, is defined by

$$
I(X: Y \mid Z):=H(X \mid Z)-H(X \mid Y Z) .
$$

It is easy to see that the mutual information is symmetric under exchange of $X$ and $Y$, i.e.,

$$
I(X: Y \mid Z)=I(Y: X \mid Z)
$$

Furthermore, because of the strong subadditivity (3.4), the mutual information cannot be negative, and $I(X: Y)=0$ holds if and only if $X$ and $Y$ are mutually independent. More generally, $I(X: Y \mid Z)=0$ if and only if $X \leftrightarrow Z \leftrightarrow Y$ is a Markov chain.

### 3.1.6 Smooth min- and max- entropies

The dependency of the min- and max-entropy of a random variable on the underlying probability mass functions is discontinuous. To see this, consider a random variable $X$ with alphabet $\left\{1, \ldots, 2^{\ell}\right\}$ and probability mass function $P_{X}^{\varepsilon}$ given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{X}^{\varepsilon}(1)=1-\varepsilon \\
& P_{X}^{\varepsilon}(x)=\frac{\varepsilon}{2^{\ell}-1} \quad \text { if } x>1
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\varepsilon \in[0,1]$. It is easy to see that, for $\varepsilon=0$,

$$
H_{\max }(X)_{P_{X}^{0}}=0
$$

whereas, for any $\varepsilon>0$,

$$
H_{\max }(X)_{P_{X}^{\varepsilon}}=\ell .
$$

Note also that the trace distance between the two distributions satisfies $\delta\left(P_{X}^{0}, P_{X}^{\varepsilon}\right)=\varepsilon$. That is, an arbitrarily small change in the distribution can change the entropy $H_{\max }(X)$ by an arbitrary amount. In contrast, a small change of the underlying probability mass function is often irrelevant in applications. This motivates the following definition of smooth min- and max-entropies, which extends the above definition.
Let $X$ and $Y$ be random variables with joint probability mass function $P_{X Y}$, and let $\varepsilon \geq 0$. The $\varepsilon$-smooth min-entropy of $X$ conditioned on $Y$ is defined as

$$
H_{\min }^{\varepsilon}(X \mid Y):=\max _{Q_{X Y} \in \mathcal{B}^{\varepsilon}\left(P_{X Y}\right)} H_{\min }(X \mid Y)_{Q_{X Y}}
$$

where the maximum ranges over the $\varepsilon$-ball $\mathcal{B}^{\varepsilon}\left(P_{X Y}\right)$ of probability mass functions $Q_{X Y}$ satisfying $\delta\left(P_{X Y}, Q_{X Y}\right) \leq \varepsilon$. Similarly, the $\varepsilon$-smooth max-entropy of $X$ conditioned on $Y$ is defined as

$$
H_{\max }^{\varepsilon}(X \mid Y):=\min _{Q_{X Y} \in \mathcal{B}^{\varepsilon}\left(P_{X Y}\right)} H_{\max }(X \mid Y)_{Q_{X Y}}
$$

Note that the original definitions of $H_{\min }$ and $H_{\max }$ can be seen as the special case where $\varepsilon=0$.

### 3.1.7 Shannon entropy as a special case of min- and max-entropy

We have already seen that the Shannon entropy always lies between the min- and the max-entropy (see (3.2)). In the special case of $n$-tuples of i.i.d. random variables, the gap between $H_{\min }^{\varepsilon}$ and $H_{\max }^{\varepsilon}$ approaches zero with increasing $n$, which means that all entropies become identical. This is expressed by the following lemma.
Lemma 3.1.4. For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(X_{n}, Y_{n}\right)$ be a sequence of i.i.d. pairs of random variables, i.e., $P_{X_{1} Y_{1} \cdots X_{n} Y_{n}}=P_{X Y}^{\times n}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H(X \mid Y)_{P_{X Y}}=\lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} H_{\min }^{\varepsilon}\left(X_{1} \cdots X_{n} \mid Y_{1} \cdots Y_{n}\right) \\
& H(X \mid Y)_{P_{X Y}}=\lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} H_{\max }^{\varepsilon}\left(X_{1} \cdots X_{n} \mid Y_{1} \cdots Y_{n}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. The lemma is a consequence of the law of large numbers (see Section 2.3.7), applied to the random variables $Z_{i}:=h\left(X_{i} \mid Y_{i}\right)$, for $h(x \mid y)$ defined by (3.3). More details are given in the exercises.

### 3.2 An example application: channel coding

### 3.2.1 Definition of the problem

Consider the following scenario. A sender, traditionally called Alice, wants to send a message $M$ to a receiver, Bob. They are connected by a communication channel $\mathbf{p}$ that takes inputs $X$ from Alice and outputs $Y$ on Bob's side (see Section 2.3.8). The channel might be noisy, which means that $Y$ can differ from $X$. The challenge is to find an appropriate encoding scheme that allows Bob to retrieve the correct message $M$, except with a small error probability $\varepsilon$. As we shall see, $\varepsilon$ can always be made arbitrarily small (at the cost of the amount of information that can be transmitted), but it is generally impossible to reach $\varepsilon=0$, i.e., Bob cannot retrieve $M$ with absolute certainty.
To describe the encoding and decoding process, we assume without loss of generality ${ }^{4}$ that the message $M$ is represented as an $\ell$-bit string, i.e., $M$ takes values from the set $\{0,1\}^{\ell}$. Alice then applies an encoding function enc $\ell:\{0,1\}^{\ell} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ that maps $M$ to a channel input $X$. On the other end of the line, Bob applies a decoding function $\operatorname{dec}_{\ell}$ : $\mathcal{Y} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ to the channel output $Y$ in order to retrieve $M^{\prime}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
M \xrightarrow[\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}]{ } X \xrightarrow[\mathbf{p}]{ } Y \xrightarrow[\operatorname{dec}_{\ell}]{ } M^{\prime} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The transmission is successful if $M=M^{\prime}$. More generally, for any fixed encoding and decoding procedures enc ${ }_{\ell}$ and $\operatorname{dec}_{\ell}$, and for any message $m \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$, we can define

$$
p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}}(m):=P\left[\operatorname{dec}_{\ell} \circ \mathbf{p} \circ \operatorname{enc}_{\ell}(M) \neq M \mid M=m\right]
$$

as the probability that the decoded message $M^{\prime}:=\operatorname{dec}_{\ell} \circ \mathbf{p} \circ \mathrm{enc}_{\ell}(M)$ generated by the process (3.5) does not coincide with $M .{ }^{5}$

In the following, we analyze the maximum number of message bits $\ell$ that can be transmitted in one use of the channel $\mathbf{p}$ if we tolerate a maximum error probability $\varepsilon$,

$$
\ell^{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{p}):=\max \left\{\ell \in \mathbb{N}: \exists \mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}: \max _{m} p_{\mathrm{err}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}}, \mathrm{dec}_{\ell}}(m) \leq \varepsilon\right\} .
$$

### 3.2.2 The general channel coding theorem

The channel coding theorem provides a lower bound on the quantity $\ell^{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{p})$. It is easy to see from the formula below that reducing the maximum tolerated error probability by a factor of 2 comes at the cost of reducing the number of bits that can be transmitted reliably by 1 . It can also be shown that the bound is almost tight (up to terms $\log _{2} \frac{1}{\varepsilon}$ ).

[^9]Theorem 3.2.1. For any channel $\mathbf{p}$ and any $\varepsilon \geq 0$,

$$
\ell^{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{p}) \geq \max _{P_{X}}\left(H_{\min }(X)-H_{\max }(X \mid Y)\right)-\log _{2} \frac{1}{\varepsilon}-3
$$

where the entropies on the right hand side are evaluated for the random variables $X$ and $Y$ jointly distributed according to $P_{X Y}=P_{X} \mathbf{p} .{ }^{6}$

The proof idea is illustrated in Fig. 3.1.


Figure 3.1: The figure illustrates the proof idea of the channel coding theorem. The range of the encoding function enc ${ }_{\ell}$ is called code and their elements are the codewords.

Proof. The argument is based on a randomized construction of the encoding function. Let $P_{X}$ be the distribution that maximizes the right hand side of the claim of the theorem and let $\ell$ be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ell=\left\lfloor H_{\min }(X)-H_{\max }(X \mid Y)-\log _{2} \frac{2}{\varepsilon}\right\rfloor \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

In a first step, we consider an encoding function enc $_{\ell}$ chosen at random by assigning to each $m \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ a value $\operatorname{enc}_{\ell}(m):=X$ where $X$ is chosen according to $P_{X}$. We then show that for a decoding function $\operatorname{dec}_{\ell}$ that maps $y \in \mathcal{Y}$ to an arbitrary value $m^{\prime} \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ that is compatible with $y$, i.e., $\operatorname{enc}_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}$, the error probability for a message $M$ chosen uniformly at random satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\operatorname{enc}_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}}(M)\right\rangle=P\left[\operatorname{dec}_{\ell} \circ \mathbf{p} \circ \operatorname{enc}_{\ell}(M) \neq M\right] \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

In a second step, we use this bound to show that there exist enc ${ }_{\ell-1}^{\prime}$ and $\operatorname{dec}_{\ell-1}^{\prime}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\operatorname{enc}_{\ell-1}^{\prime}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell-1}^{\prime}}(m) \leq \varepsilon \quad \forall m \in\{0,1\}^{\ell-1} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^10]We then have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ell^{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{p}) & \geq \ell-1 \\
& =\left\lfloor H_{\min }(X)-H_{\max }(X \mid Y)-\log _{2}(2 / \varepsilon)\right\rfloor-1 \\
& \geq H_{\min }(X)-H_{\max }(X \mid Y)-\log _{2}(1 / \varepsilon)-3 .
\end{aligned}
$$

To prove (3.7), let enc $c_{\ell}$ and $M$ be chosen at random as described, let $Y:=\mathbf{p} \circ \mathrm{enc}_{\ell}(M)$ be the channel output, and let $M^{\prime}:=\operatorname{dec}_{\ell}(Y)$ be the decoded message. We then consider any pair $(m, y)$ such that $P_{M Y}(m, y)>0$. It is easy to see that, conditioned on the event that $(M, Y)=(m, y)$, the decoding function $\operatorname{dec}_{\ell} \operatorname{described~above~can~only~fail,~i.e.,~}^{\text {e }}$ produce an $M^{\prime} \neq M$, if there exists $m^{\prime} \neq m$ such that enc $c_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}$. Hence, the probability that the decoding fails is bounded by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left[M \neq M^{\prime} \mid M=m, Y=y\right] \leq P\left[\exists m^{\prime} \neq m: \operatorname{enc}_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}\right] \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, by the union bound, we have

$$
P\left[\exists m^{\prime} \neq m: \operatorname{enc}_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}\right] \leq \sum_{m^{\prime} \neq m} P\left[\operatorname{enc}_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}\right]
$$

Because, by construction, $\operatorname{enc}_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right)$ is a value chosen at random according to the distribution $P_{X}$, the probability in the sum on the right hand side of the inequality is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left[\operatorname{enc} \ell_{\ell}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}\right] & =\sum_{x \in \operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}} P_{X}(x) \\
& \leq\left|\operatorname{supp} P_{X \mid Y=y}\right| \max _{x} P_{X}(x) \\
& \leq 2^{-\left(H_{\min }(X)-H_{\max }(X \mid Y)\right)},
\end{aligned}
$$

where the last inequality follows from the definitions of $H_{\min }$ and $H_{\max }$. Combining this with the above and observing that there are only $2^{\ell}-1$ values $m^{\prime} \neq m$, we find

$$
P\left[M \neq M^{\prime} \mid M=m, Y=y\right] \leq 2^{\ell-\left(H_{\min }(X)-H_{\max }(X \mid Y)\right)} \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2}
$$

Because this holds for any $m$ and $y$, we have

$$
P\left[M \neq M^{\prime}\right] \leq \max _{m, y} P\left[M \neq M^{\prime} \mid M=m, Y=y\right] \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} .
$$

This immediately implies that (3.7) holds on average over all choices of enc $\ell$. But this also implies that there exists at least one specific choice for enc ${ }_{\ell}$ such that (3.7) holds.
It remains to show inequality (3.8). For this, we divide the set of messages $\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ into two equally large sets $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$ such that $p_{\operatorname{err}}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}}(\underline{m}) \leq p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}}(\bar{m})$ for any $\underline{m} \in \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ and $\bar{m} \in \overline{\mathcal{M}}$. We then have

$$
\max _{m \in \underline{\mathcal{M}}} p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\text {enc }_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}}(m) \leq \min _{m \in \overline{\mathcal{M}}} p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \mathrm{dec}_{\ell}}(m) \leq 2^{-(\ell-1)} \sum_{m \in \overline{\mathcal{M}}} p_{\mathrm{err}}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \mathrm{dec}_{\ell}}(m)
$$

Using (3.7), we conclude

$$
\max _{m \in \underline{\mathcal{M}}} p_{\text {err }}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \mathrm{dec}_{\ell}}(m) \leq 2 \sum_{m \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}} 2^{-\ell} p_{\text {err }}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \mathrm{dec}_{\ell}}(m)=2\left\langle p_{\text {err }}^{\mathrm{enc}_{\ell}, \operatorname{dec}_{\ell}}(M)\right\rangle \leq \varepsilon
$$

Inequality (3.8) then follows by defining $\mathrm{enc}_{\ell-1}^{\prime}$ as the encoding function enc ${ }_{\ell}$ restricted to $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$, and adapting the decoding function accordingly.

### 3.2.3 Channel coding for i.i.d. channels

Realistic communication channels (e.g., an optical fiber) can usually be used repeatedly. Moreover, such channels often are accurately described by an i.i.d. noise model. In this case, the transmission of $n$ subsequent signals over the physical channel corresponds to a single use of a channel of the form $\mathbf{p}^{\times n}=\mathbf{p} \times \cdots \mathbf{p}$. To determine the amount of information that can be transmitted from a sender to a receiver using the physical channel $n$ times is thus given by Theorem 3.2.1 applied to $\mathbf{p}^{\times n}$.
In applications, the number $n$ of channel uses is typically large. It is thus convenient to measure the capacity of a channel in terms of the asymptotic rate

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{rate}(\mathbf{p})=\lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \ell^{\varepsilon}\left(\mathbf{p}^{\times n}\right) \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The computation of the rate will rely on the following corollary, which follows from Theorem 3.2.1 and the definition of smooth entropies.

Corollary 3.2.2. For any channel $\mathbf{p}$ and any $\varepsilon, \varepsilon^{\prime}, \varepsilon^{\prime \prime} \geq 0$,

$$
\ell^{\varepsilon+\varepsilon^{\prime}+\varepsilon^{\prime \prime}}(\mathbf{p}) \geq \max _{P_{X}}\left(H_{\min }^{\varepsilon^{\prime}}(X)-H_{\max }^{\varepsilon^{\prime \prime}}(X \mid Y)\right)-\log _{2} \frac{1}{\varepsilon}-3
$$

where the entropies on the right hand side are evaluated for $P_{X Y}:=P_{X} \mathbf{p}$.
Combining this with Lemma 3.1.4, we get the following lower bound for the rate of a channel.

Theorem 3.2.3. For any channel $\mathbf{p}$

$$
\operatorname{rate}(\mathbf{p}) \geq \max _{P_{X}}(H(X)-H(X \mid Y))=\max _{P_{X}} I(X: Y)
$$

where the entropies on the right hand side are evaluated for $P_{X Y}:=P_{X} \mathbf{p}$.

### 3.2.4 The converse

We conclude our treatment of channel coding with a proof sketch which shows that the bound given in Theorem 3.2.3 is tight. The main ingredient to the proof is the information processing inequality

$$
I(U: W) \leq I(U: V)
$$

which holds for any random variables such that $U \leftrightarrow V \leftrightarrow W$ is a Markov chain. The inequality is proved by
$I(U: W) \leq I(U: W)+I(U: V \mid W)=I(U: V W)=I(U: V)+I(U: W \mid V)=I(U: V)$,
where the first inequality holds because the mutual information cannot be negative and the last equality follows because $I(U: W \mid V)=0$ (see end of Section 3.1.5). The remaining equalities are essentially rewritings of the chain rule (for the Shannon entropy).

Let now $M, X, Y$, and $M^{\prime}$ be defined as in (3.5). If the decoding is successful then $M=M^{\prime}$ which implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(M)=I\left(M: M^{\prime}\right) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Applying the information processing inequality first to the Markov chain $M \leftrightarrow Y \leftrightarrow M^{\prime}$ and then to the Markov chain $M \leftrightarrow X \leftrightarrow Y$ gives

$$
I\left(M: M^{\prime}\right) \leq I(M: Y) \leq I(X: Y)
$$

Combining this with (3.11) and assuming that the message $M$ is uniformly distributed over the set $\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ of bitstrings of length $\ell$ gives

$$
\ell=H(M) \leq \max _{P_{X}} I(X: Y)
$$

It is straightforward to verify that the statement still holds approximately if $\ell$ on the left hand side is replaced by $\ell^{\varepsilon}$, for some small decoding error $\varepsilon>0$. Taking the limits as in (3.10) finally gives

$$
\operatorname{rate}(\mathbf{p}) \leq \max _{P_{X}} I(X: Y)
$$

## 4 Quantum States and Operations

The mathematical formalism used in quantum information theory to describe quantum mechanical systems is in many ways more general than that of typical introductory books on quantum mechanics. This is why we devote a whole chapter to it. The main concepts to be treated in the following are density operators, which represent the state of a system, as well as positive-valued measures (POVMs) and completely positive maps (CPMs), which describe measurements and, more generally, the evolution of a system.

### 4.1 Preliminaries

### 4.1.1 Hilbert spaces and operators on them

An inner product space is a vector space (over $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$ ) equipped with an inner product $(\cdot, \cdot)$. A Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is an inner product space such that the metric defined by the norm $\|\alpha\| \equiv \sqrt{(\alpha, \alpha)}$ is complete, i.e., every Cauchy sequence is convergent. We will often deal with finite-dimensional spaces, where the completeness condition always holds, i.e., inner product spaces are equivalent to Hilbert spaces.
We denote the set of homomorphisms (i.e., the linear maps) from a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ to a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}^{\prime}$ by $\operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}, \mathcal{H}^{\prime}\right)$. Furthermore, $\operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ is the set of endomorphism (i.e., the homomorphisms from a space to itself) on $\mathcal{H}$, that is, $\operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})=\operatorname{Hom}(\mathcal{H}, \mathcal{H})$. The identity operator $\alpha \mapsto \alpha$ that maps any vector $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ to itself is denoted by id.

The adjoint of a homomorphism $S \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}, \mathcal{H}^{\prime}\right)$, denoted $S^{*}$, is the unique operator in $\operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}^{\prime}, \mathcal{H}\right)$ such that

$$
\left(\alpha^{\prime}, S \alpha\right)=\left(S^{*} \alpha^{\prime}, \alpha\right)
$$

for any $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ and $\alpha^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}^{\prime}$. In particular, we have $\left(S^{*}\right)^{*}=S$. If $S$ is represented as a matrix, then the adjoint operation can be thought of as the conjugate transpose.

In the following, we list some properties of endomorphisms $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$.

- $S$ is normal if $S S^{*}=S^{*} S$.
- $S$ is unitary if $S S^{*}=S^{*} S=\mathrm{id}$. Unitary operators $S$ are always normal.
- $S$ is Hermitian if $S^{*}=S$. Hermitian operators are always normal.
- $S$ is positive if $(\alpha, S \alpha) \geq 0$ for all $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$. Positive operators are always Hermitian. We will sometimes write $S \geq 0$ to express that $S$ is positive.
- $S$ is a projector if $S S=S$. Projectors are always positive.

Given an orthonormal basis $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ of $\mathcal{H}$, we also say that $S$ is diagonal with respect to $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ if the matrix $\left(S_{i, j}\right)$ defined by the elements $S_{i, j}=\left(e_{i}, S e_{j}\right)$ is diagonal.

### 4.1.2 The bra-ket notation

In this script, we will make extensive use of a variant of Dirac's bra-ket notation, where vectors are interpreted as operators. More precisely, we identify any vector $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ with an endomorphism $|\alpha\rangle \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{H})$, called ket, and defined as

$$
|\alpha\rangle: \quad \gamma \mapsto \alpha \gamma
$$

for any $\gamma \in \mathbb{C}$. The adjoint $|\alpha\rangle^{*}$ of this mapping is called bra and denoted by $\langle\alpha|$. It is easy to see that $\langle\alpha|$ is an element of the dual space $\mathcal{H}^{*}:=\operatorname{Hom}(\mathcal{H}, \mathbb{C})$, namely the linear functional defined by

$$
\langle\alpha|: \quad \beta \mapsto(\alpha, \beta)
$$

for any $\beta \in \mathcal{H}$.
Using this notation, the concatenation $\langle\alpha \| \beta\rangle$ of a $\operatorname{bra}\langle\alpha| \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathcal{H}, \mathbb{C})$ with a ket $|\beta\rangle \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{H})$ results in an element of $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C})$, which can be identified with $\mathbb{C}$. It follows immediately from the above definitions that, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{H}$,

$$
\langle\alpha \| \beta\rangle \equiv(\alpha, \beta) .
$$

We will thus in the following denote the scalar product by $\langle\alpha \mid \beta\rangle$.
Conversely, the concatenation $|\beta\rangle\langle\alpha|$ is an element of $\operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ (or, more generally, of $\operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}, \mathcal{H}^{\prime}\right)$ if $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ and $\beta \in \mathcal{H}^{\prime}$ are defined on different spaces). In fact, any endomorphism $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ can be written as a linear combination of such concatenations, i.e.,

$$
S=\sum_{i}\left|\beta_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\alpha_{i}\right|
$$

for some families of vectors $\left\{\alpha_{i}\right\}_{i}$ and $\left\{\beta_{i}\right\}_{i}$. For example, the identity id $\in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ can be written as

$$
\mathrm{id}=\sum_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|
$$

for any basis $\left\{e_{i}\right\}$ of $\mathcal{H}$.

### 4.1.3 Tensor products

Given two Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, the tensor product $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ is defined as the Hilbert space spanned by elements of the form $|\alpha\rangle \otimes|\beta\rangle$, where $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\beta \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$, such that the following equivalences hold

- $\left(\alpha+\alpha^{\prime}\right) \otimes \beta=\alpha \otimes \beta+\alpha^{\prime} \otimes \beta$
- $\alpha \otimes\left(\beta+\beta^{\prime}\right)=\alpha \otimes \beta+\alpha \otimes \beta^{\prime}$
- $\mathbf{0} \otimes \beta=\alpha \otimes \mathbf{0}=\mathbf{0}$
for any $\alpha, \alpha^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\beta, \beta^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$, where $\mathbf{0}$ denotes the zero vector. Furthermore, the inner product of $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ is defined by the linear extension (and completion) of

$$
\left\langle\alpha \otimes \beta \mid \alpha^{\prime} \otimes \beta^{\prime}\right\rangle=\left\langle\alpha \mid \alpha^{\prime}\right\rangle\left\langle\beta \mid \beta^{\prime}\right\rangle .
$$

For two homomorphisms $S \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{A}^{\prime}\right)$ and $T \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{B}^{\prime}\right)$, the tensor product $S \otimes T$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
(S \otimes T)(\alpha \otimes \beta) \equiv(S \alpha) \otimes(T \beta) \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\beta \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$. The space spanned by the products $S \otimes T$ can be canonically identified ${ }^{1}$ with the tensor product of the spaces of the homomorphisms, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{A}^{\prime}\right) \otimes \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{B}^{\prime}\right) \cong \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{A}^{\prime} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{\prime}\right) \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

This identification allows us to write, for instance,

$$
|\alpha\rangle \otimes|\beta\rangle=|\alpha \otimes \beta\rangle,
$$

for any $\alpha \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\beta \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$.

### 4.1.4 Trace and partial trace

The trace of an endomorphism $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ over a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is defined by ${ }^{2}$

$$
\operatorname{tr}(S) \equiv \sum_{i}\left\langle e_{i}\right| S\left|e_{i}\right\rangle
$$

where $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ is any orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}$. The trace is well defined because the above expression is independent of the choice of the basis, as one can easily verify.

The trace operation tr is obviously linear, i.e.,

$$
\operatorname{tr}(u S+v T)=u \operatorname{tr}(S)+v \operatorname{tr}(T)
$$

for any $S, T \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ and $u, v \in \mathbb{C}$. It also commutes with the operation of taking the adjoint, ${ }^{3}$

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(S^{*}\right)=\operatorname{tr}(S)^{*}
$$

Furthermore, the trace is cyclic, i.e.,

$$
\operatorname{tr}(S T)=\operatorname{tr}(T S)
$$

[^11]Also, it is easy to verify ${ }^{4}$ that the $\operatorname{trace} \operatorname{tr}(S)$ of a positive operator $S \geq 0$ is positive. More generally

$$
\begin{equation*}
(S \geq 0) \wedge(T \geq 0) \Longrightarrow \operatorname{tr}(S T) \geq 0 \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The partial trace ${ }^{5} \operatorname{tr}_{B}$ is a mapping from the endomorphisms $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ on a product space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ onto the endomorphisms $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. It is defined by the linear extension of the mapping. ${ }^{6}$

$$
\operatorname{tr}_{B}: \quad S \otimes T \mapsto \operatorname{tr}(T) S,
$$

for any $S \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and $T \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$.
Similarly to the trace operation, the partial $\operatorname{trace} \operatorname{tr}_{B}$ is linear and commutes with the operation of taking the adjoint. Furthermore, it commutes with the left and right multiplication with an operator of the form $T_{A} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}$ where $T_{A} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right) .{ }^{7}$ That is, for any operator $S_{A B} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(S_{A B}\left(T_{A} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)\right)=\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(S_{A B}\right) T_{A} \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\left(T_{A} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) S_{A B}\right)=T_{A} \operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(S_{A B}\right) \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will also make use of the property that the trace on a bipartite system can be decomposed into partial traces on the individual subsystems, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{tr}\left(S_{A B}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(S_{A B}\right)\right) \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, more generally, for an operator $S_{A B C} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}\right)$,

$$
\operatorname{tr}_{A B}\left(S_{A B C}\right)=\operatorname{tr}_{A}\left(\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(S_{A B C}\right)\right)
$$

### 4.1.5 Decompositions of operators and vectors

Spectral decomposition. Let $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ be normal and let $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ be an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}$. Then there exists a unitary $U \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ and an operator $D \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ which is diagonal with respect to $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ such that

$$
S=U D U^{*}
$$

[^12]The spectral decomposition implies that, for any normal $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$, there exists a basis $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ of $\mathcal{H}$ with respect to which $S$ is diagonal. That is, $S$ can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
S=\sum_{i} \alpha_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right| \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\alpha_{i}$ are the eigenvalues of $S$.
Expression (4.7) can be used to give a meaning to a complex function $f: \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ applied to a normal operator $S$. We define $f(S)$ by

$$
f(S) \equiv \sum_{i} f\left(\alpha_{i}\right)\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right| .
$$

Polar decomposition. Let $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$. Then there exists a unitary $U \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ such that

$$
S=\sqrt{S S^{*}} U
$$

and

$$
S=U \sqrt{S^{*} S}
$$

Singular decomposition. Let $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ and let $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ be an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}$. Then there exist unitaries $U, V \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ and an operator $D \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ which is diagonal with respect to $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ such that

$$
S=V D U
$$

In particular, for any $S \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}, \mathcal{H}^{\prime}\right)$, there exist bases $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ of $\mathcal{H}$ and $\left\{e_{i}^{\prime}\right\}_{i}$ of $\mathcal{H}^{\prime}$ such that the matrix defined by the elements $\left(e_{i}^{\prime}, S e_{j}\right)$ is diagonal.

Schmidt decomposition. The Schmidt decomposition can be seen as a version of the singular decomposition for vectors. The statement is that any vector $\Psi \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ can be written in the form

$$
\Psi=\sum_{i} \gamma_{i} e_{i} \otimes e_{i}^{\prime}
$$

where $e_{i} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $e_{i}^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$ are eigenvectors of the operators $\rho_{A}:=\operatorname{tr}_{B}(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)$ and $\rho_{B}:=\operatorname{tr}_{A}(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)$, respectively, and where $\gamma_{i}^{2}$ are the corresponding eigenvalues. In particular, the existence of the Schmidt decomposition implies that $\rho_{A}$ and $\rho_{B}$ have the same nonzero eigenvalues.

### 4.1.6 Operator norms and the Hilbert-Schmidt inner product

The Hilbert-Schmidt inner product between two operators $S, T \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$ is defined by

$$
(S, T):=\operatorname{tr}\left(S^{*} T\right)
$$

The induced norm $\|S\|_{2}:=\sqrt{(S, S)}$ is called Hilbert-Schmidt norm. If $S$ is normal with spectral decomposition $S=\sum_{i} \alpha_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|$ then

$$
\|S\|_{2}=\sqrt{\sum_{i}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2}}
$$

An important property of the Hilbert-Schmidt inner product $(S, T)$ is that it is positive whenever $S$ and $T$ are positive.

Lemma 4.1.1. Let $S, T \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$. If $S \geq 0$ and $T \geq 0$ then

$$
\operatorname{tr}(S T) \geq 0
$$

Proof. If $S$ is positive we have $S=\sqrt{S}^{2}$ and $T=\sqrt{T}^{2}$. Hence, using the cyclicity of the trace, we have

$$
\operatorname{tr}(S T)=\operatorname{tr}\left(V^{*} V\right)
$$

where $V=\sqrt{S} \sqrt{T}$. Because the trace of a positive operator is positive, it suffices to show that $V^{*} V \geq 0$. This, however, follows from the fact that, for any $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$,

$$
\langle\phi| V^{*} V|\phi\rangle=\|V \phi\|^{2} \geq 0 .
$$

The trace norm of $S$ is defined by

$$
\|S\|_{1}:=\operatorname{tr}|S|
$$

where

$$
|S|:=\sqrt{S^{*} S}
$$

If $S$ is normal with spectral decomposition $S=\sum_{i} \alpha_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|$ then

$$
\|S\|_{1}=\sum_{i}\left|\alpha_{i}\right| .
$$

The following lemma provides a useful characterization of the trace norm.
Lemma 4.1.2. For any $S \in \operatorname{End}(\mathcal{H})$,

$$
\|S\|_{1}=\max _{U}|\operatorname{tr}(U S)|
$$

where $U$ ranges over all unitaries on $\mathcal{H}$.

Proof. We need to show that, for any unitary $U$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\operatorname{tr}(U S)| \leq \operatorname{tr}|S| \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

with equality for some appropriately chosen $U$.
Let $S=V|S|$ be the polar decomposition of $S$. Then, using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality

$$
\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(Q^{*} R\right)\right| \leq\|Q\|_{2}\|R\|_{2}
$$

with $Q:=\sqrt{|S|} V^{*} U^{*}$ and $R:=\sqrt{|S|}$ we find

$$
|\operatorname{tr}(U S)|=|\operatorname{tr}(U V|S|)|=|\operatorname{tr}(U V \sqrt{|S|} \sqrt{|S|})| \leq \sqrt{\operatorname{tr}\left(U V|S| V^{*} U^{*}\right) \operatorname{tr}(|S|)}=\operatorname{tr}(|S|),
$$

which proves (4.8). Finally, it is easy to see that equality holds for $U:=V^{*}$.

### 4.1.7 The vector space of Hermitian operators

The set of Hermitian operators on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, in the following denoted $\operatorname{Herm}(\mathcal{H})$, forms a real vector space. Furthermore, equipped with the Hilbert Schmidt inner product defined in the previous section, $\operatorname{Herm}(\mathcal{H})$ is an inner product space.
If $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}$ then the set of operators $E_{i, j}$ defined by

$$
E_{i, j}:= \begin{cases}\frac{1}{2}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{j}\right|+\frac{1}{2}\left|e_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right| & \text { if } i \leq j \\ \frac{i}{2}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{j}\right|-\frac{i}{2}\left|e_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right| & \text { if } i>j\end{cases}
$$

forms an orthonormal basis of $\operatorname{Herm}(\mathcal{H})$. We conclude from this that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Herm}(\mathcal{H})=(\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{H})^{2} \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

For two Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, we have in analogy to (4.2)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right) \cong \operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right) \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

To see this, consider the canonical mapping from $\operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ to $\operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ defined by (4.1). It is easy to verify that this mapping is injective. Furthermore, because by (4.9) the dimension of both spaces equals $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)^{2} \operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)^{2}$, it is a bijection, which proves (4.10).

### 4.2 Postulates of quantum mechanics

Despite more than one century of research, numerous questions related to the foundations of quantum mechanics are still unsolved (and highly disputed). For example, no fully satisfying explanation for the fact that quantum mechanics has its particular mathematical structure has been found so far. As a consequence, some of the aspects to be discussed
in the following, e.g., the postulates of quantum mechanics, might appear to lack a clear motivation.
In this section, we pursue one of the standard approaches to quantum mechanics. It is based on a number of postulates about the states of physical systems as well as their evolution. (For more details, we refer to Section 2 of [6], where an equivalent approach is described.) The postulates are as follows:

1. States: The set of states of an isolated physical system is in one-to-one correspondence to the projective space of a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. In particular, any physical state can be represented by a normalized vector $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$ which is unique up to a phase factor. In the following, we will call $\mathcal{H}$ the state space of the system. ${ }^{8}$
2. Composition: For two physical systems with state spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, the state space of the product system is isomorphic to $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$. Furthermore, if the individual systems are in states $\phi \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\phi^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$, then the joint state is

$$
\Psi=\phi \otimes \phi^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}
$$

3. Evolutions: For any possible evolution of an isolated physical system with state space $\mathcal{H}$ and for any fixed time interval $\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right]$ there exists a unitary $U$ describing the mapping of states $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$ at time $t_{0}$ to states

$$
\phi^{\prime}=U \phi
$$

at time $t_{1}$. The unitary $U$ is unique up to a phase factor.
4. Measurements: For any measurement on a physical system with state space $\mathcal{H}$ there exists an observable $O$ with the following properties. $O$ is a Hermitian operator on $\mathcal{H}$ such that each eigenvalue $x$ of $O$ corresponds to a possible measurement outcome. If the system is in state $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$, then the probability of observing outcome $x$ when applying the measurement is given by

$$
P_{X}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x}|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|\right)
$$

where $P_{x}$ denotes the projector onto the eigenspace belonging to the eigenvalue $x$, i.e., $O=\sum_{x} x P_{x}$. Finally, the state $\phi_{x}^{\prime}$ of the system after the measurement, conditioned on the event that the outcome is $x$, equals

$$
\phi_{x}^{\prime}:=\sqrt{\frac{1}{P_{X}(x)}} P_{x} \phi
$$

### 4.3 Quantum states

In quantum information theory, one often considers situations where the state or the evolution of a system is only partially known. For example, we might be interested in

[^13]a scenario where a system might be in two possible states $\phi_{0}$ or $\phi_{1}$, chosen according to a certain probability distribution. Another simple example is a system consisting of two correlated parts $A$ and $B$ in a state
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}\left(e_{0} \otimes e_{0}+e_{1} \otimes e_{1}\right) \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

where $\left\{e_{0}, e_{1}\right\}$ are orthonormal vectors in $\mathcal{H}_{A}=\mathcal{H}_{B}$. From the point of view of an observer that has no access to system $B$, the state of $A$ does not correspond to a fixed vector $\phi \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$, but is rather described by a mixture of such states. In this section, we introduce the density operator formalism, which allows for a simple and convenient characterization of such situations.

### 4.3.1 Density operators - Definition and properties

The notion of density operators has been introduced independently by von Neumann and Landau in 1927. Since then, it has been widely used in quantum statistical mechanics and, more recently, in quantum information theory.
Definition 4.3.1. A density operator $\rho$ on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is a normalized positive operator on $\mathcal{H}$, i.e., $\rho \geq 0$ and $\operatorname{tr}(\rho)=1$. The set of density operators on $\mathcal{H}$ is denoted by $\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{H})$. A density operator is said to be pure if it has the form $\rho=|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|$. If $\mathcal{H}$ is $d$-dimensional and $\rho$ has the form $\rho=\frac{1}{d}$. id then it is called fully mixed.

It follows from the spectral decomposition theorem that any density operator can be written in the form

$$
\rho=\sum_{x} P_{X}(x)\left|e_{x}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{x}\right|
$$

where $P_{X}$ is the probability mass function defined by the eigenvalues $P_{X}(x)$ of $\rho$ and $\left\{e_{x}\right\}_{x}$ are the corresponding eigenvectors. Given this representation, it is easy to see that a density operator is pure if and only if exactly one of the eigenvalues equals 1 whereas the others are 0 . In particular, we have the following lemma.

Lemma 4.3.2. A density operator $\rho$ is pure if and only if $\operatorname{tr}\left(\rho^{2}\right)=1$.

### 4.3.2 Quantum-mechanical postulates in the language of density operators

In a first step, we adapt the postulates of Section 4.2 to the notion of density operators. At the same time, we generalize them to situations where the evolution and measurements only act on parts of a composite system.

1. States: The states of a physical system are represented as density operators on a state space $\mathcal{H}$. For an isolated system whose state, represented as a vector, is $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$, the corresponding density operator is defined by $\rho:=|\phi\rangle\langle\phi| \cdot{ }^{9}$

[^14]2. Composition: The states of a composite system with state spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ are represented as density operators on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$. Furthermore, if the states of the individual subsystems are independent of each other and represented by density operators $\rho_{A}$ and $\rho_{B}$, respectively, then the state of the joint system is $\rho_{A} \otimes \rho_{B}$.
3. Evolution: Any isolated evolution of a subsystem of a composite system over a fixed time interval $\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right]$ corresponds to a unitary on the state space $\mathcal{H}$ of the subsystem. For a composite system with state space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and isolated evolutions on both subsystems described by $U_{A}$ and $U_{B}$, respectively, any state $\rho_{A B}$ at time $t_{0}$ is transformed into the state ${ }^{10}$
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{A B}^{\prime}=\left(U_{A} \otimes U_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)\left(U_{A}^{*} \otimes U_{B}^{*}\right) \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

at time $t_{1} .{ }^{11}$
4. Measurement: Any isolated measurement on a subsystem of a composite system is specified by a Hermitian operator, called observable. When applying a measurement $O_{A}=\sum_{x} x P_{x}$ on the first subsystem of a composite system $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ whose state is $\rho_{A B}$, the probability of observing outcome $x$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B} \rho_{A B}\right) \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the post-measurement state conditioned on this outcome is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{A B, x}^{\prime}=\frac{1}{P_{X}(x)}\left(P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \rho_{A B}\left(P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) . \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is straightforward to verify that these postulates are indeed compatible with those of Section 4.2. What is new is merely the fact that the evolution and measurements can be restricted to individual subsystems of a composite system. As we shall see, this extension is, however, very powerful because it allows us to examine parts of a subsystem without the need of keeping track of the state of the entire system.

### 4.3.3 Partial trace and purification

Let $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ be a composite quantum system which is initially in a state $\rho_{A B}=|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$ for some $\Psi \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$. Consider now an experiment which is restricted to the first subsystem. More precisely, assume that subsystem $A$ undergoes an isolated evolution, described by a unitary $U_{A}$, followed by an isolated measurement, described by an observable $O_{A}=$ $\sum_{x} x P_{x}$.
According to the above postulates, the probability of observing an outcome $x$ is then given by

$$
P_{X}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)\left(U_{A} \otimes U_{B}\right) \rho_{A B}\left(U_{A}^{*} \otimes U_{B}^{*}\right)\right)
$$

[^15]where $U_{B}$ is an arbitrary isolated evolution on $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. Using rules (4.6) and (4.4), this can be transformed into
$$
P_{X}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} U_{A} \operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}\right) U_{A}^{\dagger}\right),
$$
which is independent of $U_{B}$. Observe now that this expression could be obtained equivalently by simply applying the above postulates to the reduced state $\rho_{A}:=\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)$. In other words, the reduced state already fully characterizes all observable properties of the subsystem $\mathcal{H}_{A}$.
This principle, which is sometimes called locality, plays a crucial role in many informationtheoretic considerations. For example, it implies that it is impossible to influence system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ by local actions on system $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. In particular, communication between the two subsystems is impossible as long as their evolution is determined by local operations $U_{A} \otimes U_{B}$.
In this context, it is important to note that the reduced state $\rho_{A}$ of a pure joint state $\rho_{A B}$ is not necessarily pure. For instance, if the joint system is in state $\rho_{A B}=|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$ for $\Psi$ defined by (4.11) then
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{A}=\frac{1}{2}\left|e_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{0}\right|+\frac{1}{2}\left|e_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{1}\right|, \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

i.e., the density operator $\rho_{A}$ is fully mixed. In the next section, we will give an interpretation of non-pure, or mixed, density operators.

Conversely, any mixed density operator can be seen as part of a pure state on a larger system. More precisely, given $\rho_{A}$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$, there exists a pure density operator $\rho_{A B}$ on a joint system $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ (where the dimension of $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ is at least as large as the rank of $\rho_{A}$ ) such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{A}=\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}\right) \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

A pure density operator $\rho_{A B}$ for which (4.16) holds is called a purification of $\rho_{A}$.

### 4.3.4 Mixtures of states

Consider a quantum system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ whose state depends on a classical value $Z$ and let $\rho_{A}^{z} \in$ $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ be the state of the system conditioned on the event $Z=z$. Furthermore, consider an observer who does not have access to $Z$, that is, from his point of view, $Z$ can take different values distributed according to a probability mass function $P_{Z}$.

Assume now that the system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ undergoes an evolution $U_{A}$ followed by a measurement $O_{A}=\sum_{x} x P_{x}$ as above. Then, according to the postulates of quantum mechanics, the probability mass function of the measurement outcomes $x$ conditioned on the event $Z=z$ is given by

$$
P_{X \mid Z=z}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} U_{A} \rho_{A}^{z} U_{A}^{*}\right) .
$$

Hence, from the point of view of the observer who is unaware of the value $Z$, the probability mass function of $X$ is given by

$$
P_{X}(x)=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) P_{X \mid Z=z}(x) .
$$

By linearity, this can be rewritten as

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} U_{A} \rho_{A} U_{A}^{*}\right) . \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\rho_{A}:=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) \rho_{A}^{z} .
$$

Alternatively, expression (4.17) can be obtained by applying the postulates of Section 4.3.2 directly to the density operator $\rho_{A}$ defined above. In other words, from the point of view of an observer not knowing $Z$, the situation is consistently characterized by $\rho_{A}$.
We thus arrive at a new interpretation of mixed density operators. For example, the density operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{A}=\frac{1}{2}\left|e_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{0}\right|+\frac{1}{2}\left|e_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{1}\right| \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

defined by (4.15) corresponds to a situation where either state $e_{0}$ or $e_{1}$ is prepared, each with probability $\frac{1}{2}$. The decomposition according to (4.18) is, however, not unique. In fact, the same state could be written as

$$
\rho_{A}=\frac{1}{2}\left|\tilde{e}_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle\tilde{e}_{0}\right|+\frac{1}{2}\left|\tilde{e}_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle\tilde{e}_{1}\right|
$$

where $\tilde{e}_{0}:=\frac{1}{2}\left(e_{0}+e_{1}\right)$ and $\tilde{e}_{1}:=\frac{1}{2}\left(e_{0}-e_{1}\right)$. That is, the system could equivalently be interpreted as being prepared either in state $\tilde{e}_{0}$ or $\tilde{e}_{1}$, each with probability $\frac{1}{2}$.

It is important to note, however, that any predictions one can possibly make about observations restricted to system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ are fully determined by the density operator $\rho_{A}$, and, hence do not depend on the choice of the interpretation. That is, whether we see the system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ as a part of a larger system $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ which is in a pure state (as in Section 4.3.3) or as a mixture of pure states (as proposed in this section) is irrelevant as long as we are only interested in observable quantities derived from system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$.

### 4.3.5 Hybrid classical-quantum states

We will often encounter situations where parts of a system are quantum mechanical whereas others are classical. A typical example is the scenario described in Section 4.3.4, where the state of a quantum system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ depends on the value of a classical random variable $Z$.
Since a classical system can be seen as a special type of a quantum system, such situations can be described consistently using the density operator formalism introduced above. More precisely, the idea is to represent the states of classical values $Z$ by mutually orthogonal vectors on a Hilbert space. For example, the density operator describing the scenario of Section 4.3.4 would read

$$
\rho_{A Z}=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) \rho_{A}^{z} \otimes\left|e_{z}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{z}\right|,
$$

where $\left\{e_{z}\right\}_{z}$ is a family of orthonormal vectors on $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$.
More generally, we use the following definition of classicality.
Definition 4.3.3. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ be Hilbert spaces and let $\left\{e_{z}\right\}_{z}$ be a fixed orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$. Then a density operator $\rho_{A Z} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{Z}\right)$ is said to be classical on $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ (with respect to $\left\{e_{z}\right\}_{z}$ ) if ${ }^{12}$

$$
\rho_{A Z} \in \operatorname{Herm}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{span}\left\{\left|e_{z}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{z}\right|\right\}_{z}
$$

### 4.3.6 Distance between states

Given two quantum states $\rho$ and $\sigma$, we might ask how well we can distinguish them from each other. The answer to this question is given by the trace distance, which can be seen as a generalization of the corresponding distance measure for classical probability mass functions as defined in Section 2.3.6.

Definition 4.3.4. The trace distance between two density operators $\rho$ and $\sigma$ on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is defined by

$$
\delta(\rho, \sigma):=\frac{1}{2}\|\rho-\sigma\|_{1}
$$

It is straightforward to verify that the trace distance is a metric on the space of density operators. Furthermore, it is unitarily invariant, i.e., $\delta\left(U \rho U^{*}, U \sigma U^{*}\right)=\delta(\rho, \sigma)$, for any unitary $U$.
The above definition of trace distance between density operators is consistent with the corresponding classical definition of Section 2.3.6. In particular, for two classical states $\rho=\sum_{z} P(z)\left|e_{z}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{z}\right|$ and $\sigma=\sum_{z} Q(z)\left|e_{z}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{z}\right|$ defined by probability mass functions $P$ and $Q$, we have

$$
\delta(\rho, \sigma)=\delta(P, Q)
$$

More generally, the following lemma implies that for any (not necessarily classical) $\rho$ and $\sigma$ there is always a measurement $O$ that "conserves" the trace distance.

Lemma 4.3.5. Let $\rho, \sigma \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{H})$. Then

$$
\delta(\rho, \sigma)=\max _{O} \delta(P, Q)
$$

where the maximum ranges over all observables $O \in \operatorname{Herm\mathcal {H}}$ and where $P$ and $Q$ are the probability mass functions of the outcomes when applying the measurement described by $O$ to $\rho$ and $\sigma$, respectively.

[^16]Proof. Define $\Delta:=\rho-\sigma$ and let $\Delta=\sum_{i} \alpha_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|$ be a spectral decomposition. Furthermore, let $R$ and $S$ be positive operators defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
R & =\sum_{i: \alpha_{i} \geq 0} \alpha_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right| \\
S & =-\sum_{i: \alpha_{i}<0} \alpha_{i}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

that is,

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta & =R-S  \tag{4.19}\\
|\Delta| & =R+S \tag{4.20}
\end{align*}
$$

Finally, let $O=\sum_{x} x P_{x}$ be a spectral decomposition of $O$, where each $P_{x}$ is a projector onto the eigenspace corresponding to the eigenvalue $x$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(P, Q)=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{x}|P(x)-Q(x)|=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{x}\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} \rho\right)-\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} \sigma\right)\right|=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{x}\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} \Delta\right)\right| . \tag{4.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, using (4.19) and (4.20),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} \Delta\right)\right|=\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} R\right)-\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} S\right)\right| \leq\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} R\right)\right|+\left|\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x} S\right)\right|=\operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x}|\Delta|\right) \tag{4.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the last equality holds because of (4.3). Inserting this into (4.21) and using $\sum_{x} P_{x}=$ id gives

$$
\delta(P, Q) \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{x} \operatorname{tr}\left(P_{x}|\Delta|\right)=\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr}(|\Delta|)=\frac{1}{2}\|\Delta\|_{1}=\delta(\rho, \sigma) .
$$

This proves that the maximum $\max _{O} \delta(P, Q)$ on the right hand side of the assertion of the lemma cannot be larger than $\delta(\rho, \sigma)$. To see that equality holds, it suffices to verify that the inequality in(4.22) becomes an equality if for any $x$ the projector $P_{x}$ either lies in the support of $R$ or in the support of $S$. Such a choice of the projectors is always possible because $R$ and $S$ have mutually orthogonal support.

An implication of Lemma 4.3.5 is that the trace distance between two states $\rho$ and $\sigma$ can be interpreted as the maximum distinguishing probability, i.e., the maximum probability by which a difference between $\rho$ and $\sigma$ can be detected (see Lemma 2.3.1). Another consequence of Lemma 4.3 .5 is that the trace distance cannot increase under the partial trace, as stated by the following lemma.

Lemma 4.3.6. Let $\rho_{A B}$ and $\sigma_{A B}$ be bipartite density operators and let $\rho_{A}:=\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)$ and $\sigma_{A}:=\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\sigma_{A B}\right)$ be the reduced states on the first subsystem. Then

$$
\delta\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right) \leq \delta\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right)
$$

Proof. Let $P$ and $Q$ be the probability mass functions of the outcomes when applying a measurement $O_{A}$ to $\rho_{A}$ and $\sigma_{A}$, respectively. Then, for an appropriately chosen $O_{A}$, we have according to Lemma 4.3.5

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)=\delta(P, Q) \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider now the observable $O_{A B}$ on the joint system defined by $O_{A B}:=O_{A} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}$. It follows from property (4.4) of the partial trace that, when applying the measurement described by $O_{A B}$ to the joint states $\rho_{A B}$ and $\sigma_{A B}$, we get the same probability mass functions $P$ and $Q$. Now, using again Lemma 4.3.5,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right) \geq \delta(P, Q) \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

The assertion follows by combining (4.23) and (4.24).
The significance of the trace distance comes mainly from the fact that it is a bound on the probability that a difference between two states can be seen. However, in certain situations, it is more convenient to work with an alternative notion of distance, called fidelity.

Definition 4.3.7. The fidelity between two density operators $\rho$ and $\sigma$ on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is defined by

$$
F(\rho, \sigma):=\left\|\rho^{\frac{1}{2}} \sigma^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_{1}
$$

where $\|S\|_{1}:=\operatorname{tr}\left(\sqrt{S^{*} S}\right)$.
To abbreviate notation, for two vectors $\phi, \psi \in \mathcal{H}$, we sometimes write $F(\phi, \psi)$ instead of $F(|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|,|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|)$, and, similarly, $\delta(\phi, \psi)$ instead of $\delta(|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|,|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|)$. Note that the fidelity is always between 0 and 1 , and that $F(\rho, \rho)=1$.

The fidelity is particularly easy to compute if one of the operators, say $\sigma$, is pure. In fact, if $\sigma=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$, we have

$$
F(\rho,|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|)=\left\|\rho^{\frac{1}{2}} \sigma^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_{1}=\operatorname{tr}\left(\sqrt{\sigma^{\frac{1}{2}} \rho \sigma^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right)=\operatorname{tr}(\sqrt{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| \rho|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|})=\sqrt{\langle\psi| \rho|\psi\rangle} .
$$

In particular, if $\rho=|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|$, we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(\phi, \psi)=|\langle\phi \mid \psi\rangle| . \tag{4.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

The fidelity between pure states thus simply corresponds to the (absolute value of the) scalar product between the states.

The following statement from Uhlmann generalizes this statement to arbitrary states.
Theorem 4.3.8 (Uhlmann). Let $\rho_{A}$ and $\sigma_{A}$ be density operators on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Then

$$
F\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)=\max _{\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}} F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right) .
$$

where the maximum ranges over all purifications $\rho_{A B}$ and $\sigma_{A B}$ of $\rho_{A}$ and $\sigma_{A}$, respectively.

Proof. Because any finite-dimensional Hilbert space can be embedded into any other Hilbert space with higher dimension, we can assume without loss of generality that $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ have equal dimension.

Let $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ and $\left\{f_{i}\right\}_{i}$ be orthonormal bases of $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, respectively, and define

$$
\Theta:=\sum_{i} e_{i} \otimes f_{i}
$$

Furthermore, let $W \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ be the transformation of the basis $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ to the basis $\left\{f_{i}\right\}_{i}$, that is,

$$
W: e_{i} \mapsto f_{i}
$$

Writing out the definition of $\Theta$, it is easy to verify that, for any $S_{B} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\operatorname{id}_{A} \otimes S_{B}\right) \Theta=\left(S_{A}^{\prime} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \Theta \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $S_{A}^{\prime}:=W^{-1} S_{B}^{T} W$, and where $S_{B}^{T}$ denotes the transpose of $S_{B}$ with respect to the basis $\left\{f_{i}\right\}_{i}$.

Let now $\rho_{A B}=|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$ and let

$$
\Psi=\sum_{i} \alpha_{i} e_{i}^{\prime} \otimes f_{i}^{\prime}
$$

be a Schmidt decomposition of $\Psi$. Because the coefficients $\alpha_{i}$ are the square roots of the eigenvalues of $\rho_{A}$, we have

$$
\Psi=\left(\sqrt{\rho_{A}} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)\left(U_{A} \otimes U_{B}\right) \Theta
$$

where $U_{A}$ is the transformation of $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ to $\left\{e_{i}^{\prime}\right\}_{i}$ and, likewise, $U_{B}$ is the transformation of $\left\{f_{i}\right\}_{i}$ to $\left\{f_{i}^{\prime}\right\}_{i}$. Using (4.26), this can be rewritten as

$$
\Psi=\left(\sqrt{\rho_{A}} V \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \Theta
$$

for $V:=U_{A} W^{-1} U_{B}^{T} W$ unitary. Similarly, for $\sigma_{A B}=\left|\Psi^{\prime}\right\rangle\left\langle\Psi^{\prime}\right|$, we have

$$
\Psi^{\prime}=\left(\sqrt{\sigma_{A}} V^{\prime} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \Theta
$$

for some appropriately chosen unitary $V^{\prime}$. Thus, using (4.25), we find

$$
F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right)=\left|\left\langle\Psi \mid \Psi^{\prime}\right\rangle\right|=\langle\Theta| V^{*} \sqrt{\rho_{A}} \sqrt{\sigma_{A}} V^{\prime}|\Theta\rangle=\operatorname{tr}\left(V^{*} \sqrt{\rho_{A}} \sqrt{\sigma_{A}} V^{\prime}\right),
$$

where the last equality is a consequence of the definition of $\Theta$. Using the fact that any unitary $V^{\prime}$ can be obtained by an appropriate choice of the purification $\sigma_{A B}$, this can be rewritten as

$$
F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right)=\max _{U} \operatorname{tr}\left(U \sqrt{\rho_{A}} \sqrt{\sigma_{A}}\right)
$$

The assertion then follows because, by Lemma 4.1.2,

$$
F\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)=\left\|\sqrt{\rho_{A}} \sqrt{\sigma_{A}}\right\|_{1}=\max _{U} \operatorname{tr}\left(U \sqrt{\rho_{A}} \sqrt{\sigma_{A}}\right) .
$$

Uhlmann's theorem is very useful for deriving properties of the fidelity, as, e.g., the following lemma.

Lemma 4.3.9. Let $\rho_{A B}$ and $\sigma_{A B}$ be bipartite states. Then

$$
F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right) \leq F\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)
$$

Proof. According to Uhlmann's theorem, there exist purifications $\rho_{A B C}$ and $\sigma_{A B C}$ of $\rho_{A B}$ and $\sigma_{A B}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right)=F\left(\rho_{A B C}, \sigma_{A B C}\right) \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Trivially, $\rho_{A B C}$ and $\sigma_{A B C}$ are also purifications of $\rho_{A}$ and $\sigma_{A}$, respectively. Hence, again by Uhlmann's theorem,

$$
\begin{equation*}
F\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right) \geq F\left(\rho_{A B C}, \sigma_{A B C}\right) \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining (4.27) and (4.28) concludes the proof.
The trace distance and the fidelity are related to each other. In fact, for pure states, represented by normalized vectors $\phi$ and $\psi$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(\phi, \psi)=\sqrt{1-F(\phi, \psi)^{2}} . \tag{4.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

To see this, let $\phi^{\perp}$ be a normalized vector orthogonal to $\phi$ such that $\psi=\alpha \phi+\beta \phi^{\perp}$, for some $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$such that $\alpha^{2}+\beta^{2}=1$. (Because the phases of both $\phi, \phi^{\perp}, \psi$ are irrelevant, the coefficients $\alpha$ and $\beta$ can without loss of generality assumed to be real and positive.) The operators $|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|$ and $|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ can then be written as matrices with respect to the basis $\left\{\phi, \phi^{\perp}\right\}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
|\phi\rangle\langle\phi| & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
|\alpha|^{2} & \alpha \beta^{*} \\
\alpha^{*} \beta & |\beta|^{2}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular, the trace distance takes the form

$$
\delta(\phi, \psi)=\frac{1}{2} \||\phi\rangle\langle\phi|-|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|\left\|_{1}=\frac{1}{2}\right\|\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1-|\alpha|^{2} & -\alpha \beta^{*} \\
-\alpha^{*} \beta & -|\beta|^{2}
\end{array}\right) \|_{1} .
$$

The eigenvalues of the matrix on the right hand side are $\alpha_{0}=\beta$ and $\alpha_{1}=-\beta$. We thus find

$$
\delta(\phi, \psi)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\left|\alpha_{0}\right|+\left|\alpha_{1}\right|\right)=\beta
$$

Furthermore, by the definition of $\beta$, we have

$$
\beta=\sqrt{1-|\langle\phi \mid \psi\rangle|^{2}} .
$$

The assertion (4.29) then follows from (4.25).
Equality (4.29) together with Uhlmann's theorem are sufficient to prove one direction of the following lemma.

Lemma 4.3.10. Let $\rho$ and $\sigma$ be density operators. Then

$$
1-F(\rho, \sigma) \leq \delta(\rho, \sigma) \leq \sqrt{1-F(\rho, \sigma)^{2}}
$$

Proof. We only prove the second inequality. For a proof of the first, we refer to [6].
Consider two density operators $\rho_{A}$ and $\sigma_{A}$ and let $\rho_{A B}$ and $\sigma_{A B}$ be purifications such that

$$
F\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)=F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right)
$$

as in Uhlmann's theorem. Combining this with equality (4.29) and Lemma 4.3.6, we find

$$
\sqrt{1-F\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)^{2}}=\sqrt{1-F\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right)^{2}}=\delta\left(\rho_{A B}, \sigma_{A B}\right) \geq \delta\left(\rho_{A}, \sigma_{A}\right)
$$

### 4.4 Evolution and measurements

Let $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ be a composite system. We have seen in the previous sections that, as long as we are only interested in the observable quantities of subsystem $\mathcal{H}_{A}$, it is sufficient to consider the corresponding reduced state $\rho_{A}$. So far, however, we have restricted our attention to scenarios where the evolution of this subsystem is isolated.
In the following, we introduce tools that allow us to consistently describe the behavior of subsystems in the general case where there is interaction between $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. The basic mathematical objects to be introduced in this context are completely positive maps (CPMs) and positive operator valued measures ( $P O V M s$ ), which are the topic of this section.

### 4.4.1 Completely Positive Maps (CPMs)

Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be the Hilbert spaces describing certain (not necessarily disjoint) parts of a physical system. The evolution of the system over a time interval $\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right]$ induces a mapping $\mathcal{E}$ from the set of states $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ on subsystem $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ at time $t_{0}$ to the set of states $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ on subsystem $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ at time $t_{1}$. This and the following sections are devoted to the study of this mapping.
Obviously, not every function $\mathcal{E}$ from $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ corresponds to a physically possible evolution. In fact, based on the considerations in the previous sections, we have the following requirement. If $\rho$ is a mixture of two states $\rho_{0}$ and $\rho_{1}$, then we expect that $\mathcal{E}(\rho)$ is the mixture of $\mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{0}\right)$ and $\mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{1}\right)$. In other words, a physical mapping $\mathcal{E}$ needs to conserve the convex structure of the set of density operators, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}\left(p \rho_{0}+(1-p) \rho_{1}\right)=p \mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{0}\right)+(1-p) \mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{1}\right) \tag{4.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any $\rho_{0}, \rho_{1} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and any $p \in[0,1]$.
As we shall see, any mapping from $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ that satisfies (4.30) corresponds to a physical process (and vice versa). In the following, we will thus have a closer look at these mappings.
For our considerations, it will be convenient to embed the mappings from $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ into the space of mappings from $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. The convexity requirement (4.30) then turns into the requirement that the mapping is linear. In addition, the requirement that density operators are mapped to density operators will correspond to two properties, called complete positivity and trace preservation.

The definition of complete positivity is based on the definition of positivity.
Definition 4.4.1. A linear map $\mathcal{E} \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ is said to be positive if $\mathcal{E}(S) \geq 0$ for any $S \geq 0$.

An simple example of a positive map is the identity map on $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$, in the following denoted $\mathcal{I}_{A}$. A more interesting example is $\mathcal{T}_{A}$ defined by

$$
\mathcal{T}_{A}: S \mapsto S^{T}
$$

where $S^{T}$ denotes the transpose with respect to some fixed basis. To see that $\mathcal{T}_{A}$ is positive, note that $S \geq 0$ implies $\langle\phi| S|\phi\rangle \geq 0$ for any vector $\phi$. Hence $\langle\phi| S^{T}|\phi\rangle=\overline{\langle\phi| S|\phi\rangle} \geq 0$, from which we conclude $S^{T} \geq 0$.

Remarkably, positivity of two maps $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ does not necessarily imply positivity of the tensor map $\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{F}$ defined by

$$
(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{F})(S \otimes T):=\mathcal{E}(S) \otimes \mathcal{E}(T)
$$

In fact, it is straightforward to verify that the map $\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{T}_{A^{\prime}}$ applied to the positive operator $\rho_{A A^{\prime}}:=|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$, for $\Psi$ defined by (4.11), results in a non-positive operator.

To guarantee that tensor products of mappings such as $\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{F}$ are positive, a stronger requirement is needed, called complete positivity.

Definition 4.4.2. A linear map $\mathcal{E} \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ is said to be completely positive if for any Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{R}$, the map $\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{R}$ is positive.
Definition 4.4.3. A linear map $\mathcal{E} \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ is said to be trace preserving if $\operatorname{tr}(\mathcal{E}(S))=\operatorname{tr}(S)$ for any $S \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$.

We will use the abbreviation $C P M$ to denote completely positive maps. Moreover, we denote by $\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ the set of trace-preserving completely positive maps from $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$.

### 4.4.2 The Choi-Jamiolkowski isomorphism

The Choi-Jamiolkowski isomorphism is a mapping that relates CPMs to density operators. Its importance results from the fact that it essentially reduces the study of CPMs to the study of density operators. In other words, it allows us to translate mathematical statements that hold for density operators to statements for CPMs (and vice versa).

Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be Hilbert spaces, let $\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}}$ be isomorphic to $\mathcal{H}_{A}$, and define the normalized vector $\Psi=\Psi_{A^{\prime} A} \in \mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A}$ by

$$
\Psi=\frac{1}{\sqrt{d}} \sum_{i=1}^{d} e_{i} \otimes e_{i}
$$

where $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i=1, \ldots, d}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}_{A} \cong \mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}}$ and $d=\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$.
Definition 4.4.4. The Choi-Jamiolkowski mapping (relative to the basis $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i}$ ) is the linear function $\tau$ from $\operatorname{Hom}\left(\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ to $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ defined by

$$
\tau: \mathcal{E} \mapsto\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right)(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|) .
$$

Lemma 4.4.5. The Choi-Jamiolkowski mapping

$$
\tau: \operatorname{Hom}\left(\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right) \longrightarrow \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)
$$

is an isomorphism. Its inverse $\tau^{-1}$ maps any $\rho_{A^{\prime} B}$ to

$$
\tau^{-1}\left(\rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right): S_{A} \mapsto d \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\left(\left(\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\left(S_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)
$$

where $\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}: \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right) \rightarrow \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}}\right)$ is defined by

$$
\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\left(S_{A}\right):=\sum_{i, j}\left|e_{i}\right\rangle_{A^{\prime}}\left\langle\left. e_{j}\right|_{A} S_{A} \mid e_{i}\right\rangle_{A}\left\langle\left. e_{j}\right|_{A^{\prime}}\right.
$$

Proof. It suffices to verify that the mapping $\tau^{-1}$ defined in the lemma is indeed an inverse of $\tau$. We first check that $\tau \circ \tau^{-1}$ is the identity on $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. That is, we show that for any operator $\rho_{A^{\prime} B} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$, the operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau\left(\tau^{-1}\left(\rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)\right):=d \cdot\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\right)\left(\left(\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\right)(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|) \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)\left(\mathrm{id}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)\right) \tag{4.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

equals $\rho_{A^{\prime} B}$ (where we have written $\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}$ instead of $\operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}$ to indicate that the trace only acts on the second subsystem $\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}}$ ). Inserting the definition of $\Psi$, we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tau\left(\tau^{-1}\left(\rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)\right) & =d \cdot\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\right)\left(\sum_{i, j}\left(\left|e_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\left. e_{j}\right|_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mid e_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\left. e_{i}\right|_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)\left(\operatorname{id}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)\right)\right. \\
& =\sum_{i, j}\left(| e _ { i } \rangle \langle e _ { i } | _ { A ^ { \prime } } \otimes \operatorname { i d } _ { B } ) \rho _ { A ^ { \prime } B } \left(\left|e_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\left. e_{j}\right|_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)=\rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right.\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

which proves the claim that $\tau \circ \tau^{-1}$ is the identity.
It remains to show that $\tau$ is injective. For this, let $S_{A} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ be arbitrary and note that

$$
\left(\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\left(S_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{id}_{A}\right) \Psi=\left(\operatorname{id}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes S_{A}\right) \Psi
$$

Together with the fact that $\operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)=\frac{1}{d} \mathrm{id}_{A}$ this implies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right) & =d \cdot \mathcal{E}\left(S_{A} \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)\right) \\
& =d \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\left(\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right)\left(\left(\operatorname{id}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes S_{A}\right)|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|\right)\right) \\
& =d \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\left(\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right)\left(\left(\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\left(S_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{id}_{A}\right)|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|\right)\right) \\
& =d \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\left(\left(\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\left(S_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{id}_{A}\right)\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right)(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Assume now that $\tau(\mathcal{E})=0$. Then, by definition, $\left(\mathcal{I}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right)(|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)=0$. By virtue of the above equality, this implies $\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right)=0$ for any $S_{A}$ and, hence, $\mathcal{E}=0$. In other words, $\tau(\mathcal{E})=0$ implies $\mathcal{E}=0$, i.e., $\tau$ is injective.

In the following, we focus on trace-preserving CPMs. The set $\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ obviously is a subset of $\operatorname{Hom}\left(\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$. Consequently, $\tau\left(\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ is also a subset of $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. It follows immediately from the complete positivity property that $\tau\left(\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ only contains positive operators. Moreover, by the trace-preserving property, any $\rho_{A^{\prime} B} \in \tau\left(\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)=\frac{1}{d} \operatorname{id}_{A^{\prime}} . \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, $\rho_{A^{\prime} B}$ is a density operator.
Conversely, the following lemma implies ${ }^{13}$ that any density operator $\rho_{A^{\prime} B}$ that satisfies (4.32) is the image of some trace-preserving CPM. We therefore have the following

[^17]characterization of the image of $\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ under the Choi-Jamiolkowski isomorphism,
$$
\tau\left(\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)\right)=\left\{\rho_{A^{\prime} B} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right): \operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A^{\prime} B}\right)=\frac{1}{d} \operatorname{id}_{A^{\prime}}\right\}
$$

Lemma 4.4.6. Let $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}_{A^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ such that $\operatorname{tr}_{B}(|\Phi\rangle\langle\Phi|)=\frac{1}{d} \mathrm{id}_{A^{\prime}}$. Then the mapping $\mathcal{E}:=\tau^{-1}(|\Phi\rangle\langle\Phi|)$ has the form

$$
\mathcal{E}: S_{A} \mapsto U S_{A} U^{*}
$$

where $U \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ is an isometry, i.e., $U^{*} U=\operatorname{id}_{A}$.
Proof. Using the expression for $\mathcal{E}:=\tau^{-1}(|\Phi\rangle\langle\Phi|)$ provided by Lemma 4.4.5, we find, for any $S_{A} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right) & =d \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{A^{\prime}}\left(\left(\mathcal{T}_{A \rightarrow A^{\prime}}\left(S_{A}\right) \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)|\Phi\rangle\langle\Phi|\right) \\
& =d \cdot \sum_{i, j}\left\langle e_{i}\right| S_{A}\left|e_{j}\right\rangle\left(\left\langle e_{i}\right| \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)|\Phi\rangle\langle\Phi|\left(\left|e_{j}\right\rangle \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i, j} E_{i} S_{A} E_{j}^{*},
\end{aligned}
$$

where $E_{i}:=\sqrt{d} \cdot\left(\left\langle e_{i}\right| \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)|\Phi\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|$. Defining $U:=\sum_{i} E_{i}$, we conclude that $\mathcal{E}$ has the desired form, i.e., $\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right)=U S_{A} U^{*}$.

To show that $U$ is an isometry, let

$$
\Phi=\frac{1}{\sqrt{d}} \sum_{i} e_{i} \otimes f_{i}
$$

be a Schmidt decomposition of $\Phi$. (Note that, because $\operatorname{tr}_{B}(|\Phi\rangle\langle\Phi|)$ is fully mixed, the basis $\left\{e_{i}\right\}$ can be chosen to coincide with the basis used for the definition of $\tau$.) Then $\left(\left\langle e_{i}\right| \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)|\Phi\rangle=\left|f_{i}\right\rangle$ and, hence,

$$
U^{*} U=d \sum_{i, j}\left|e_{j}\right\rangle\langle\Phi|\left(\left|e_{j}\right\rangle \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)\left(\left\langle e_{i}\right| \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right)|\Phi\rangle\left\langle e_{i}\right|=\operatorname{id}_{A}
$$

### 4.4.3 Stinespring dilation

The following lemma will be of crucial importance for the interpretation of CPMs as physical maps.

Lemma 4.4.7 (Stinespring dilation). Let $\mathcal{E} \in \operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. Then there exists an isometry $U \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}\right)$, for some Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, such that

$$
\mathcal{E}: S_{A} \mapsto \operatorname{tr}_{R}\left(U S_{A} U^{*}\right)
$$

Proof. Let $\mathcal{E}_{A \rightarrow B}:=\mathcal{E}$, define $\rho_{A B}:=\tau(\mathcal{E})$, and let $\rho_{A B R}$ be a purification of $\rho_{A B}$. We then define $\mathcal{E}^{\prime}=\mathcal{E}_{A \rightarrow(B, R)}^{\prime}:=\tau^{-1}\left(\rho_{A B R}\right)$. According to Lemma 4.4.6, because $\operatorname{tr}_{B R}\left(\rho_{A B R}\right)$ is fully mixed, $\mathcal{E}_{A \rightarrow(B, R)}^{\prime}$ has the form

$$
\mathcal{E}_{A \rightarrow(B, R)}^{\prime}: S_{A} \mapsto U S_{A} U^{*}
$$

The assertion then follows from the fact that the diagram below commutes, which can be readily verified from the definition of the Choi-Jamiolkowski isomorphism. (Note that the arrow on the top corresponds to the operation $\mathcal{E}^{\prime} \mapsto \operatorname{tr}_{R} \circ \mathcal{E}^{\prime}$. .)


We can use Lemma 4.4.7 to establish a connection between general trace-preserving CPMs and the evolution postulate of Section 4.3.2. Let $\mathcal{E} \in \operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and let $U \in$ $\operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}\right)$ be the corresponding Stinespring dilation, as defined by Lemma 4.4.7. Furthermore, let $\tilde{U} \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}, \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}\right)$ be a unitary embedding of $U$ in $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}$, i.e., $\tilde{U}$ is unitary and, for some fixed $w_{0} \in \mathcal{H}_{R}$, satisfies

$$
\tilde{U}: v \otimes w_{0} \mapsto U v
$$

Using the fact that $U$ is an isometry, it is easy to see that there always exists such a $\tilde{U}$.
By construction, the unitary $\tilde{U}$ satisfies

$$
\left.\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right)=\operatorname{tr}_{R}\left(\tilde{U} S_{A} \otimes\left|w_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle w_{0}\right|\right) \tilde{U}^{*}\right)
$$

for any operator $S_{A}$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Hence, the mapping $\mathcal{E}$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ can be seen as a unitary on an extended system $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}$ (with $\mathcal{H}_{R}$ being initialized with a state $w_{0}$ ) followed by a partial trace over $\mathcal{H}_{R}$. In other words, any possible mapping from density operators to density operators that satisfies the convexity criterion (4.30) (this is exactly the set of trace-preserving CPMs ) corresponds to a unitary evolution of a larger system.

### 4.4.4 Operator-sum representation

As we have seen in the previous section, CPMs can be represented as unitaries on a larger system. In the following, we consider an alternative and somewhat more economic ${ }^{14}$ description of CPMs.

[^18]Lemma 4.4.8 (Operator-sum representation). For any $\mathcal{E} \in \operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ there exists a family $\left\{E_{x}\right\}_{x}$ of operators $E_{x} \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}: S_{A} \mapsto \sum_{x} E_{x} S_{A} E_{x}^{*} \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\sum_{x} E_{x}^{*} E_{x}=\operatorname{id}_{A}$.
Conversely, any mapping $\mathcal{E}$ of the form (4.33) is contained in $\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$.
Proof. By Lemma 4.4.7, there exists operators $U \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}\right)$ such that

$$
\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right)=\operatorname{tr}_{R}\left(U S_{A} U^{*}\right)=\sum_{x}\left(\operatorname{id}_{B} \otimes\left\langle f_{x}\right|\right) U S_{A} U^{*}\left(\operatorname{id}_{B} \otimes\left|f_{x}\right\rangle\right)
$$

where $\left\{f_{x}\right\}_{x}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}_{R}$. Defining

$$
E_{x}:=\left(\operatorname{id}_{B} \otimes\left\langle f_{x}\right|\right) U,
$$

the direct assertion follows from the fact that

$$
\sum_{x} E_{x}^{*} E_{x}=\sum_{x} U^{*}\left(\operatorname{id}_{B} \otimes\left|f_{x}\right\rangle\right)\left(\operatorname{id}_{B} \otimes\left\langle f_{x}\right|\right) U=U^{*} U=\mathrm{id}
$$

which holds because $U$ is an isometry.
The converse assertion can be easily verified as follows. The fact that any mapping of the form (4.33) is positive follows from the observation that $E_{x} S_{A} E_{x}^{*}$ is positive whenever $S_{A}$ is positive. To show that the mapping is trace-preserving, we use

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathcal{E}\left(S_{A}\right)\right)=\sum_{x} \operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x} S_{A} E_{x}^{*}\right)=\sum_{x} \operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x}^{*} E_{X} S_{A}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathrm{id}_{A} S_{A}\right) .
$$

Note that the family $\left\{E_{x}\right\}_{x}$ is not uniquely determined by the CPM $\mathcal{E}$. This is easily seen by the following example. Let $\mathcal{E}$ be the trace-preserving CPM from $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ defined by

$$
\mathcal{E}: S_{A} \mapsto \operatorname{tr}\left(S_{A}\right)|w\rangle\langle w|
$$

for any operator $S_{A} \in \operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and some fixed $w \in \mathcal{H}_{B}$. That is, $\mathcal{E}$ maps any density operator to the state $|w\rangle\langle w|$. It is easy to verify that this CPM can be written in the form (4.33) for

$$
E_{x}:=|w\rangle\left\langle e_{x}\right|
$$

where $\left\{e_{x}\right\}_{x}$ in an arbitrary orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}_{A}$.

### 4.4.5 Measurements as CPMs

An elegant approach to describe measurements is to use the notion of classical states. Let $\rho_{A B}$ be a density operator on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and let $O=\sum_{x} x P_{x}$ be an observable on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Then, according to the the measurement postulate of Section 4.3.2, the measurement process produces a classical value $X$ distributed according to the probability distribution $P_{X}$ specified by (4.13), and the post-measurement state $\rho_{A B, x}^{\prime}$ conditioned on the outcome $x$ is given by (4.14). This situation is described by a density operator

$$
\rho_{X A B}^{\prime}:=\sum_{x} P_{X}(x)\left|e_{x}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{x}\right| \otimes \rho_{A B, x}^{\prime} .
$$

on $\mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ which is classical on $\mathcal{H}_{X}$ (with respect to some orthonormal basis $\left\{e_{x}\right\}_{x}$ ). Inserting the expressions for $P_{X}$ and $\rho_{A B, x}^{\prime}$, this operator can be rewritten as

$$
\rho_{X A B}^{\prime}=\sum_{x}\left|e_{x}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{x}\right| \otimes\left(P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) \rho_{A B}\left(P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}\right) .
$$

Note that the mapping $\mathcal{E}$ from $\rho_{A B}$ to $\rho_{X A B}^{\prime}$ can be written in the operator-sum representation (4.33) with

$$
E_{x}:=|x\rangle \otimes P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B},
$$

where

$$
\sum_{x} E_{x}^{*} E_{x}=\sum_{x} P_{x} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{B}=\operatorname{id}_{A B} .
$$

It thus follows from Lemma 4.4.8 that the mapping

$$
\mathcal{E}: \rho_{A B} \mapsto \rho_{X A B}^{\prime}
$$

is a trace-preserving CPM.
This is a remarkable statement. According to the Stinespring dilation theorem, it tells us that any measurement can be seen as a unitary on a larger system. In other words, a measurement is just a special type of evolution of the system.

### 4.4.6 Positive operator valued measures (POVMs)

When analyzing a physical system, one is often only interested in the probability distribution of the observables (but not in the post-measurement state). Consider a system that first undergoes an evolution characterized by a CPM and, after that, is measured. Because, as argued above, a measurement can be seen as a CPM, the concatenation of the evolution and the measurement is again a CPM $\mathcal{E i n} \operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. If the measurement outcome $X$ is represented by orthogonal vectors $\left\{e_{x}\right\}_{x}$ of $\mathcal{H}_{X}$, this CPM has the form

$$
\mathcal{E}: S_{A} \mapsto \sum_{x}\left|e_{x}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{x}\right| \otimes E_{x} S_{A} E_{x}^{*}
$$

In particular, if we apply the $\mathrm{CPM} \mathcal{E}$ to a density operator $\rho_{A}$, the distribution $P_{X}$ of the measurement outcome $X$ is given by

$$
P_{X}(x)=\operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x} \rho_{A} E_{x}^{*}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(M_{x} \rho_{A}\right),
$$

where $M_{x}:=E_{x}^{*} E_{x}$.
From this we conclude that, as long as we are only interested in the probability distribution of $X$, it suffices to characterize the evolution and the measurement by the family of operators $M_{x}$. Note, however, that the operators $M_{x}$ do not fully characterize the full evolution. In fact, distinct operators $E_{x}$ can give raise to the same operator $M_{x}=E_{x}^{*} E_{x}$.
It is easy to see from Lemma 4.4.8 that the family $\left\{M_{x}\right\}_{x}$ of operators defined as above satisfies the following definition.

Definition 4.4.9. A positive operator valued measure (POVM) (on $\mathcal{H}$ ) is a family $\left\{M_{x}\right\}_{x}$ of positive operators $M_{x} \in \operatorname{Herm}(\mathcal{H})$ such that

$$
\sum_{x} M_{x}=\operatorname{id}_{\mathcal{H}}
$$

Conversely, any POVM $\left\{M_{x}\right\}_{x}$ corresponds to a (not unique) physically possible evolution followed by a measurement. This can easily be seen by defining a CPM by the operator-sum representation with operators $E_{x}:=\sqrt{M_{x}}$.

## 5 Non-Classicality of Quantum Theory

### 5.1 Introduction

A physical theory should allow us to make predictions about observations. In quantum mechanics, these predictions are generally probabilistic. For instance, if we perform an experiment in which we measure a two-level particle in state $1 / \sqrt{2}\left(e_{0}+e_{1}\right)$ with respect to an observable $O=0\left|e_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{0}\right|+1\left|e_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{1}\right|$ then, according to quantum theory, we expect to see each of the possible outcomes, 0 and 1 , with probability $\frac{1}{2}$. That is, if we repeat the experiment many times, we will get a sequence of outcomes consisting of approximately as many 0 s as 1 s . The theory, however, does not predict the individual outcomes. In particular, each sequence with the same relative frequency of 0 s and 1 s is equally likely.
The probabilistic nature of quantum mechanics prompted several physicists, among them Albert Einstein, Boris Podolsky, and Nathan Rosen, to question whether the theory is complete [3]. ${ }^{1}$ In principle, the individual measurement outcomes may depend on an additional parameter, also called classical hidden variable. A theory involving such hidden variables could be deterministic, and probabilities would merely arise from the fact that we do not know the values of the hidden variables.
It turns out, however, that there is no consistent way to explain experimental data by a classical hidden variable theory, at least as long as one requires the theory to be compatible with special relativity. More precisely, one can show that any physical theory which involves classical parameters that are correlated to the measurement outcomes is necessarily signaling, meaning that it would allow instantaneous communication between space-like separated regions. In this section, we prove a similar (but slightly weaker) result, saying that any classical theory that predicts individual measurement outcomes is non-local.
Simon Kochen and Ernst Specker [4] (see also [9]) were among the first to give a mathematical argument implying that any hidden variable theory that is compatible with quantum mechanics would have certain unnatural properties. More precisely, they showed that deterministic predictions are necessarily contextual. This means that there cannot be a hidden variable theory that is independent of the measurement arrangement.
An alternative argument ${ }^{2}$ was proposed by John Bell in 1964 [2]. Bell considered an inequality involving the statistics of measurements at two distant locations, known as the Bell inequality. This inequality is satisfied by any theory in which the outcomes of physical measurements are determined by local classical variables. In contrast, the

[^19]measurement statistics predicted by quantum mechanics (and verified by experiments) violate the inequality, leading to the conclusion that quantum mechanics is incompatible with any local classical theory.
The following presentation follows in spirit Bell's argument (although we will not make use of Bell's inequalities).

### 5.2 Correlations in generalized theories

Consider a setting where local measurements are performed at two distant sites, in the following called Alice and Bob. Alice chooses a measurement setup $a \in \mathcal{A}$ and obtains a measurement outcome $X$. Similarly, Bob chooses a setup $b \in \mathcal{B}$ and obtains $Y$.

A physical theory would typically make certain predictions about the measurement outcomes $X$ and $Y$, depending on the measurement arrangements $(a, b)$. These predictions may be only probabilistic, in which case they specify the probability distribution of the pair of outcomes $(X, Y)$ depending on the input pair $(a, b) \in \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{B}$, in the following denoted by $P_{X Y \mid a b}$.

From now on, we will additionally assume that Alice and Bob's measurements take place in space-like separated regions of space-time. Special relativity then predicts that no information can flow between Alice and Bob. This property is captured by the notion of non-signaling distributions.

Definition 5.2.1. A conditional distribution $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ is said to be non-signaling if for all $a \in \mathcal{A}$ and $b \in \mathcal{B}$

$$
P_{X \mid a b} \equiv P_{X \mid a} \quad \text { and } \quad P_{Y \mid a b} \equiv P_{Y \mid b}
$$

where $P_{X \mid a b}$ and $P_{Y \mid a b}$ denote the marginals of $P_{X Y \mid a b}$.
In a classical local theory, one would expect that the outcomes obtained by measurements at each of the locations (Alice or Bob) only depend on local classical parameters. The resulting conditional probability distribution then has the following property.

Definition 5.2.2. A conditional distribution $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ is said to be classically local if it can be written as a convex combination of products of distributions $P_{X \mid a z}$ and $P_{Y \mid b z}$, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X Y \mid a b} \equiv \sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) P_{X \mid a z} P_{Y \mid b z} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $P_{Z}$ is a probability distribution and $P_{X \mid a z}$ and $P_{Y \mid b z}$ are conditional distributions.
The following lemma provides an intuitive characterization of classically local conditional distributions.

Lemma 5.2.3. Let $\mathcal{A}=\left\{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{u}\right\}$ and $\mathcal{B}=\left\{b_{1}, \ldots, b_{v}\right\}$. A conditional distribution $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ is classically local if and only if there exist families of random variables $\left\{X_{a}\right\}_{a}$ and $\left\{Y_{b}\right\}_{b}$ jointly distributed according to $P_{X_{a_{1}} \cdots X_{a_{u}} Y_{b_{1}} \cdots Y_{b_{v}}}$ such that for all $a \in \mathcal{A}$ and $b \in \mathcal{B}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X Y \mid a b}=P_{X_{a} Y_{b}} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Assume first that there exist families of random variables $\left\{X_{a}\right\}_{a}$ and $\left\{Y_{b}\right\}_{b}$ with the desired property (5.2). With the definition

$$
Z:=\left(X_{a_{1}}, \ldots, X_{a_{u}}, Y_{b_{1}}, \ldots, Y_{b_{v}}\right),
$$

the distribution $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ can be written in the form (5.1) where

$$
P_{X \mid a z}(x):= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x=x_{a} \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

and

$$
P_{Y \mid b z}(y):=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
1 & \text { if } y=y_{b} \\
0 & \text { otherwise }
\end{array} .\right.
$$

To prove the converse statement, assume that $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ is classically local, i.e., it can be written in the form (5.1) for appropriately chosen conditional distributions $P_{X \mid a z}$ and $P_{Y \mid b z}$. It is then easy to verify that the families of random variables $\left\{X_{a}\right\}_{a}$ and $\left\{Y_{b}\right\}_{b}$ defined by

$$
P_{X_{a_{1}} \cdots X_{a_{u}} Y_{b_{1}} \cdots Y_{b_{v}}}:=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) P_{X \mid a_{1} z} \cdots P_{X \mid a_{u} z} \cdot P_{Y \mid b_{1} z} \cdots P_{Y \mid b_{v} z}
$$

satisfy (5.2).
As we shall see, conditional distributions predicted by the laws of quantum mechanics are always non-signaling, but they are generally not classically local.

### 5.3 Quantum-mechanical correlations

Let us now consider the type of correlations that arise from measurements of quantum systems. According to the discussion in Section 4.4.6, each possible measurement arrangement $a$ of Alice is characterized by a POVM $\left\{E_{x}^{a}\right\}_{x}$, and, similarly, each arrangement $b$ of Bob corresponds to a POVM $\left\{F_{y}^{b}\right\}_{y}$. If the measurements are performed simultaneously on a state $\rho_{A B}$, the resulting conditional probability distribution $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{X Y \mid a b}(x, y) \equiv \operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x}^{a} \otimes F_{y}^{b} \rho_{A B}\right) \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the fact that $\sum_{y} F_{y}^{b}=\operatorname{id}_{B}$, we have

$$
P_{X \mid a b}(x)=\sum_{y} P_{X Y \mid a b}(x, y)=\sum_{y} \operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x}^{a} \otimes F_{y}^{b} \rho_{A B}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x}^{a} \rho_{A}\right),
$$

that is, $P_{X \mid a b}$ is independent of $b$. Likewise, $P_{Y \mid a b}$ is independent of $a$, which implies that $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ is non-signaling. (This is of course no surprise because we know that quantum mechanics is compatible with special relativity.)

As mentioned above, however, quantum mechanics is not classically local. To see this, we consider a specific setup where Alice and Bob's measurements are applied to a fully entangled state $\rho_{A B}:=|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$ defined by

$$
\Psi:=\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}\left(e_{0} \otimes f_{0}+e_{1} \otimes f_{1}\right)
$$

where $\left\{e_{0}, e_{1}\right\}$ and $\left\{f_{0}, f_{1}\right\}$ are orthonormal bases of Alice's system $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and Bob's system $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, respectively. The measurements of Alice and Bob are along the pair of vectors

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{\phi} & :=\cos (\phi) e_{0}+\sin (\phi) e_{1} \\
v_{i}^{\perp} & :=\cos \left(\phi+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) e_{0}+\sin \left(\phi+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) e_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

parametrized by an angle $\phi \in \mathbb{R}$. In other words, Alice and Bob choose angles $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ and then apply POVMs defined by the operators

$$
E_{0}^{a}:=\left|v_{a}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{a}\right| \quad \text { and } \quad E_{1}^{a}:=\left|v_{a}^{\perp}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{a}^{\perp}\right|
$$

for Alice and

$$
F_{0}^{b}:=\left|v_{b}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{b}\right| \quad \text { and } \quad F_{1}^{b}:=\left|v_{b}^{\perp}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{b}^{\perp}\right|
$$

for Bob. According to (5.3), the conditional probability distribution of the measurement outcomes is then given by

$$
P_{X Y \mid a b}(x, y)=\operatorname{tr}\left(E_{x}^{a} \otimes F_{y}^{b} \rho_{A B}\right)= \begin{cases}\frac{1}{2} \cos ^{2}(a-b) & \text { if } x=y  \tag{5.4}\\ \frac{1}{2} \sin ^{2}(a-b) & \text { if } x \neq y\end{cases}
$$

The following statement is a variant of Bell's theorem.
Lemma 5.3.1. The conditional distribution $P_{X Y \mid a b}$ defined by (5.4) is not classically local.

Proof. The proof is based on Lemma 5.2.3 which provides an alternative characterization of classical locality. Assume by contradiction that there exist families of random variables $\left\{X_{a}\right\}_{a}$ and $\left\{Y_{b}\right\}_{b}$ satisfying (5.2), and let $\delta:=\frac{\pi}{2 N}$, for some even $N \in \mathbb{N}$. According to (5.4), we then have

$$
P\left[X_{\pi / 2} \neq Y_{0}\right]=1 \quad \text { and } \quad P\left[X_{0}=Y_{0}\right]=1
$$

which implies

$$
P\left[X_{0} \neq X_{\pi / 2}\right]=1 .
$$

Similarly, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left[X_{0} \neq X_{\pi / 2}\right] & \leq P\left[\bigvee_{i=0}^{N / 2-1}\left(X_{2 i \delta} \neq Y_{(2 i+1) \delta}\right) \vee\left(Y_{(2 i+1) \delta} \neq X_{(2 i+2) \delta}\right)\right] \\
& \leq \sum_{i=0}^{N / 2-1} P\left[X_{2 i \delta} \neq Y_{(2 i+1) \delta}\right]+P\left[Y_{(2 i+1) \delta} \neq X_{(2 i+2) \delta}\right]=N \sin ^{2}(\delta)
\end{aligned}
$$

where the inequality is the union bound. Because $N \sin ^{2}(\delta)=N \sin ^{2}\left(\frac{\pi}{2 N}\right)<1$ for $N>2$, we arrive at a contradiction.

Lemma 5.3.1 immediately implies that the measurement statistics predicted by quantum mechanics (and verified experimentally, see e.g., [1]) cannot be explained by any theory that is classically local.

## 6 Entropy of quantum states

In Chapter 3 we have discussed the definitions and properties of classical entropy measures and we have learned about their usefulness in the discussion of the channel coding theorem. After the introduction of the quantum mechanical basics in chapter 4 (and after the short insertion about the non-classicality in quantum theory) we are ready to introduce the notion of entropy in the quantum mechanical context. Textbooks usually start the discussion of quantum mechanical entropy with the definition of the so called von Neumann entropy and justify the explicit expression as being the most natural analog of the classical Shannon entropy for quantum systems. But this explanation is not completely satisfactory. Hence a lot of effort is made to replace the von Neumann entropy by the quantum version of the min-entropy which can be justified by its profound operational interpretation (recall for example the discussion of the channel coding theorem where we worked with the min-entropy and where the Shannon entropy only appears as a special case).

One can prove that the min-entropy of a product state $\rho^{\otimes n}$ converges for large $n$ to $n$-times the von Neumann entropy of the state $\rho$. The quantum mechanical min-entropy thus generalizes the von Neumann entropy in some sense. But since this work is still in progress we forgo this modern point of view and begin with the definition of the von Neumann entropy but omit the proof of the strong subadditivity since it can be stated more elegantly in terms of the quantum mechanical min-entropy (see [7]).

### 6.1 Motivation and definitions

Let $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ be a Hilbert space of dimension $n$ which is spanned by the linearly independent family $\{|z\rangle\}_{z}$ and consider an arbitrary state $\rho$ on $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ which is classical with respect to $\{|z\rangle\}_{z}$. Hence,

$$
\rho=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z)|z\rangle\langle z|,
$$

where $P_{Z}(z)$ is the probability distribution for measuring $|z\rangle$ in a measurement of $\rho$ in the basis $\{|z\rangle\}_{z}$. Our central demand on the definition of the entropy measures of quantum states is that they generalize the classical entropies. More precisely, we demand that the evaluation of the quantum entropy on $\rho$ yields the corresponding classical entropy of the distribution $P_{Z}(z)$. The following definitions meet these requirements as we will see below.

Definition 6.1.1. Let $\rho$ be an arbitrary state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Then the von Neumann entropy $H$ is the quantum mechanical generalization of the Shannon entropy.

It is defined by

$$
H(A)_{\rho}:=-\operatorname{tr}(\rho \log \rho) .
$$

The quantum mechanical min-entropy $H_{\text {min }}$ generalizes the classical min-entropy. It is defined by

$$
H_{\min }(A)_{\rho}:=-\log _{2}\|\rho\|_{\infty} .
$$

The quantum mechanical max-entropy $H_{\max }$ generalizes the classical max-entropy. It is defined by

$$
H_{\max }(A)_{\rho}:=\log _{2}|\sigma(\rho)|,
$$

where $\sigma(\rho)$ denotes the spectrum of the operator $\rho$.
Now, we check if our requirement from above really is fulfilled. To that purpose we consider again the state

$$
\rho_{Z}=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z)|z\rangle\langle z| .
$$

Since the map $\rho \rightarrow \rho \log \rho$ is defined through the eigenvalues of $\rho$,

$$
H(Z)_{\rho}=-\operatorname{tr}(\rho \log \rho)=-\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) \log _{2} P_{Z}(z)
$$

which reproduces that the Shannon entropy as demanded. Recall that $\|\rho\|_{\infty}$ is the operator norm which equals the greatest eigenvalue of the operator $\rho$. Thus, the quantum mechanical min-entropy reproduces the classical min-entropy:

$$
H_{\min }(Z)_{\rho}=-\log _{2}\|\rho\|_{\infty}=-\log \max _{z \in \mathcal{Z}} P_{Z}(z)
$$

To show that the classical max-entropy emerges as a special case from the quantum mechanical max-entropy we make the simple observation

$$
H_{\max }(Z)_{\rho}=\log _{2}|\sigma(\rho)|=\log _{2}\left|\operatorname{supp} P_{Z}\right| .
$$

Notation. Let $\rho_{A B}$ be a density operator on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and let $\rho_{A}$ and $\rho_{B}$ be defined as the partial traces

$$
\rho_{A}:=\operatorname{tr}_{B} \rho_{A B}, \quad \rho_{B}:=\operatorname{tr}_{A} \rho_{A B}
$$

Then the entropies of the states $\rho_{A B} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right), \rho_{A} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and $\rho_{B} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ are denoted by

$$
H(A B)_{\rho}:=H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}}, H(A)_{\rho}:=H(A)_{\rho_{A}}, H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}:=H(B)_{\rho_{B}} .
$$

(other conventions are for instance $H(\rho)$ or $H\left(\rho_{A}\right)$, and there may be a few of those left in these notes)

### 6.2 Properties of the von Neumann entropy

In the present section we state and prove some basic properties of the von Neumann entropy.

Lemma 6.2.1. Let $\rho$ be an arbitrary state on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Then,

$$
H(A)_{\rho} \geq 0
$$

with equality iff $\rho$ is pure.
Proof. Let $\{|j\rangle\}_{j}$ be a complete orthonormal system which diagonalizes $\rho$, i.e.,

$$
\rho=\sum_{j} p_{j}|j\rangle\langle j|,
$$

with $\sum_{j} p_{j}=1$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(A)_{\rho}=-\sum_{j} p_{j} \log p_{j} \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The function $-x \log x$ is positive on $[0,1]$. Consequently, the RHS above is positive which shows that the entropy is non-negative. It is left to show that $H(A)_{\rho}=0$ iff $\rho$ is pure.

Assume $H(A)_{\rho}=0$. Since the function $-x \log x$ is non-negative on $[0,1]$ each term in the summation in (6.1) has to vanish separately. Thus, either $p_{k}=0$ or $p_{k}=1$ for all $k$. Because of the constraint $\sum_{j} p_{j}=1$ exactly one coefficient $p_{m}$ is equal to one whereas all the others vanish. We conclude that $\rho$ describes the pure state $|m\rangle$.

Assume $\rho$ is the pure state $|\phi\rangle$. Hence,

$$
\rho=|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|
$$

which yields $H(A)_{\rho}=0$.
Lemma 6.2.2. The von Neumann entropy is invariant under similarity transformations, i.e.,

$$
H(A)_{\rho}=H(A)_{U \rho U^{-1}}
$$

for $U \in G L\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$.
Proof. Let $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function and let $M$ be an operator on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Recall that

$$
f(M):=V^{-1} f\left(V M V^{-1}\right) V,
$$

where $V \in \mathrm{GL}(\mathcal{H})$ diagonalizes $M$. Now we show that

$$
f\left(U M U^{-1}\right)=U f(M) U^{-1}
$$

for $U \in \mathrm{GL}(\mathcal{H})$ arbitrary. Let $D$ denote the diagonal matrix similar to $M$. The operator $V U^{-1}$ diagonalizes $U M U^{-1}$. According to the definition above,

$$
f\left(U M U^{-1}\right)=U V^{-1} f\left(V U^{-1} U M U^{-1} U V^{-1}\right) V U^{-1}=U V^{-1} f\left(V M V^{-1}\right) V U^{-1}
$$

On the other hand

$$
U f(M) U^{-1}=U V^{-1} f\left(V M V^{-1}\right) V U^{-1}
$$

This claims the assertion from above. Since the trace is unaffected by similarity transformations we conclude the proof by setting $M=\rho$ and $f(x)=x \log (x)$.

Lemma 6.2.3. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be Hilbert spaces, let $|\psi\rangle$ be is a pure state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and let $\rho_{A B}:=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$. Then,

$$
H(A)_{\rho}=H(B)_{\rho} .
$$

Proof. According to the Schmidt decomposition there exist orthonormal families $\left\{\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\right\}$ and $\left\{\left|i_{B}\right\rangle\right\}$ in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, respectively, and positive real numbers $\left\{\lambda_{i}\right\}$ with the property $\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}^{2}=1$ such that

$$
|\psi\rangle=\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}\left|i_{A}\right\rangle \otimes\left|i_{B}\right\rangle .
$$

Hence, $\operatorname{tr}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)$ and $\operatorname{tr}_{A}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)$ have the same eigenvalues and thus, $H(A)_{\rho_{A B}}=H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}$.

Lemma 6.2.4. Let $\rho_{A}$ and $\rho_{B}$ be arbitrary states. Then,

$$
H(A B)_{\rho_{A} \otimes \rho_{B}}=H(A)_{\rho_{A}}+H(B)_{\rho_{B}}
$$

Proof. Let $\left\{p_{i}^{A}\right\}_{i}\left(\left\{p_{j}^{B}\right\}_{j}\right)$ and $\left\{\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\right\}_{i}\left(\left\{\left|j_{B}\right\rangle\right\}_{j}\right)$ be the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the operators $\rho_{A}\left(\rho_{B}\right)$. Hence,

$$
\rho_{A} \otimes \rho_{B}=\sum_{i j} p_{i}^{A} p_{j}^{B}\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\left\langle i_{A}\right| \otimes\left|j_{B}\right\rangle\left\langle j_{B}\right| .
$$

We deduce

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(A B)_{\rho_{A} \otimes \rho_{B}} & =-\sum_{i j} p_{i}^{A} p_{j}^{B} \log \left(p_{i}^{A} p_{j}^{B}\right) \\
& =H(A)_{\rho_{A}}+H(B)_{\rho_{A}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Lemma 6.2.5. Let $\rho$ be a state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ of the form

$$
\rho=p_{1} \rho_{1}+\ldots+p_{n} \rho_{n}
$$

with density operators $\left\{\rho_{i}\right\}_{i}$ having support on pairwise orthogonal subspaces of $\mathcal{H}$ and with $\sum_{j} p_{j}=1$. Then,

$$
H(A)_{\rho}=H_{\text {class }}\left(\left\{p_{i}\right\}_{i}\right)+\sum_{j} p_{j} H(A)_{\rho_{j}}
$$

where $\left\{H_{\text {class }}\left(\left\{p_{i}\right\}_{i}\right)\right\}$ denotes the Shannon entropy of the probability distribution $\left\{p_{i}\right\}_{i}$.

Proof. Let $\left\{\lambda_{j}^{(i)}\right\}$ and $\left\{\left|j^{(i)}\right\rangle\right\}$ the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the density operators $\left\{\rho_{i}\right\}$. Thus,

$$
\rho=\sum_{i, j} p_{i} \lambda_{j}^{(i)}\left|j^{(i)}\right\rangle\left\langle j^{(i)}\right|
$$

and consequently,

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(A)_{\rho} & =-\sum_{i, j} p_{i} \lambda_{j}^{(i)} \log \left(p_{i} \lambda_{j}^{(i)}\right) \\
& =-\sum_{i}\left(\sum_{j} \lambda_{j}^{(i)}\right) p_{i} \log \left(p_{i}\right)-\sum_{i} p_{i} \sum_{j} \lambda_{j}^{(i)} \log \left(\lambda_{j}^{(i)}\right) \\
& =H_{\text {class }}\left(\left\{p_{i}\right\}\right)+\sum_{i} p_{i} H(A)_{\rho_{i}}
\end{aligned}
$$

A consequence of this lemma is that the entropy is concave. More precisely, let $\rho_{1}, \ldots, \rho_{n}$ be density operators on the same Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Consider a mixture of those density operators according to a probability distribution $\left\{p_{j}\right\}_{j}$ on $\{1, \ldots, n\}, \rho=\sum_{j} p_{j} \rho_{j}$.

Then

$$
H(A)_{\rho} \geq \sum_{j} p_{j} H(A)_{\rho_{j}}
$$

Proof. Let $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ be an auxiliary Hilbert space of dimension $n$ which is spanned by the linearly independent family $\{|i\rangle\}_{i}$ and let $\tilde{\rho}$ be the state

$$
\tilde{\rho}:=\sum_{j} p_{j}|j\rangle\langle j| \otimes \rho_{A}^{(j)}
$$

on $\mathcal{H}_{Z} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A}$ which is classical on $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ with respect to $\{|i\rangle\}_{i}$. According to the strong subadditivity property

$$
H(Z \mid A)_{\tilde{\rho}} \leq H(Z)_{\tilde{\rho}}
$$

or equivalently,

$$
H(Z A)_{\tilde{\rho}} \leq H(Z)_{\tilde{\rho}}+H(B)_{\tilde{\rho}} .
$$

Using Lemma 6.2.6, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(Z A)_{\tilde{\rho}} & =H\left(\left\{p_{j}\right\}_{j}\right)+\sum_{j} p_{j} H\left(\rho_{A}^{(j)}\right) \\
H(Z)_{\tilde{\rho}} & =H\left(\left\{p_{j}\right\}_{j}\right) \\
H(B)_{\tilde{\rho}} & =H\left(p_{1} \rho_{A}^{(1)}+\ldots+\rho_{A}^{(n)}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus,

$$
p_{1} H\left(\rho_{A}^{(1)}\right)+\ldots+p_{n} H\left(\rho_{A}^{(n)}\right) \leq H\left(p_{1} \rho_{A}^{(1)}+\ldots+\rho_{A}^{(n)}\right)
$$

Lemma 6.2.6. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ be Hilbert spaces and let $\rho_{A Z}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{Z}$ which is classical on $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ with respect to the basis $\{|z\rangle\}_{z}$ of $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$, i.e., $\rho_{A Z}$ is of the form

$$
\rho_{A Z}=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) \rho_{A}^{(z)} \otimes|z\rangle\langle z| .
$$

Then

$$
H(A Z)_{\rho}=H_{\text {class }}\left(\left\{P_{Z}(z)\right\}_{z}\right)+\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) H(A)_{\rho_{A}^{(z)}} .
$$

Proof. Define

$$
\tilde{\rho}_{z}:=\rho_{A}^{(z)} \otimes|z\rangle\langle z|,
$$

apply Lemma 6.2 .5 with $\rho_{i}$ replaced by $\tilde{\rho}_{z}$, use lemma 6.2.4 and apply Lemma 6.2.1.

### 6.3 The conditional entropy and its properties

We have encountered the identity

$$
H_{\text {class }}(X \mid Y)=H_{\text {class }}(X Y)-H_{\text {class }}(Y)
$$

for classical entropies in the chapter about classical information theory. We use exactly this identity to define conditional entropy in the context of quantum information theory.

Definition 6.3.1. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be two Hilbert spaces and let $\rho_{A B}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$. Then, the conditional entropy $H(A \mid B)_{\rho}$ is defined by

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}:=H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}}-H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}
$$

Recasting this defining equation leads immediately to the so called chain rule:

$$
H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}}=H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}+H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}
$$

Lemma 6.3.2. Let $\rho_{A B}$ be a pure state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$. Then $H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}<0$ iff $\rho_{A B}$ is entangled, i.e. $H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}} \neq H(A)_{\rho_{A B}}+H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}$.

Proof. Observe that

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}=H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}}-H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}
$$

Recall from Lemma 6.2 .1 that the entropy of a state is zero iff it is pure. The state $\operatorname{tr}_{A}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)$ is pure iff $\rho_{A B}$ is not entangled. Thus. indeed $H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}$ is negative iff $\rho_{A B}$ is entangled.

Hence, the the conditional entropy can be negative.
Lemma 6.3.3. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{C}$ be Hilbert spaces and let $\rho_{A B C}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes$ $\mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}$. Then,

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B C}}=-H(A \mid C)_{\rho_{A B C}} .
$$

Proof. We have seen in Lemma 6.2.3 that $\rho_{A B C}$ pure implies that

$$
H(A B)_{\rho}=H(C)_{\rho}, H(A C)_{\rho}=H(B)_{\rho}, H(B C)_{\rho}=H(A)_{\rho} .
$$

Thus,

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho}=H(A B)_{\rho}-H(B)_{\rho}=H(C)_{\rho}-H(A C)_{\rho}=-H(A \mid C) \rho
$$

Lemma 6.3.4. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ be Hilbert spaces, let $\{|z\rangle\}_{z}$ be a complete orthonormal basis in $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ and let $\rho_{A Z}$ be classical on $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ with respect to the basis $\{|z\rangle\}_{z}$, i.e.,

$$
\rho_{A Z}=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) \rho_{A}^{(z)} \otimes|z\rangle\langle z| .
$$

Then the entropy conditioned on $Z$ is

$$
H(A \mid Z)_{\rho}=\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) H\left(\rho_{A}^{(z)}\right)
$$

Moreover,

$$
H(A \mid Z)_{\rho} \geq 0
$$

Proof. Apply Lemma 6.2.6 to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(A \mid Z)_{\rho} & =H(A Z)_{\rho}-H(Z)_{\rho} \\
& =H_{\text {class }}\left(P_{Z}(z)\right)+\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) H\left(\rho_{A}^{(z)}\right)-H_{\text {class }}\left(P_{Z}(z)\right) \\
& =\sum_{z} P_{Z}(z) H\left(\rho_{A}^{(z)}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

In Lemma 6.2 .1 we have seen that $H(\rho) \geq 0$ for all states $\rho$. Hence, $H(A \mid Z)_{\rho} \geq 0$.
Now it's time to state one of the central identities in quantum information theory: the so called strong subadditivity.

Theorem 6.3.5. Let $\rho_{A B C}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}$. Then,

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B C}} \geq H(A \mid B C)_{\rho_{A B C}} .
$$

In textbooks you presently find complex proofs of this theorem based on the Araki-Lieb inequality (see for example [6]). An alternative shorter proof can be found in [7]. Nevertheless we forgo the proof.

Lemma 6.3.6. Let $\rho$ be an arbitrary state on a d-dimensional Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then,

$$
H(\rho) \leq \log _{2} d
$$

with equality iff $\rho$ is a completely mixed state, i.e., a state similar to $\frac{1}{d} i d_{\mathcal{H}}$.

Proof. Let $\rho$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}$ which maximizes the entropy and let $\{|j\rangle\}$ the diagonalizing basis, i.e.,

$$
\rho=\sum_{j} p_{j}|j\rangle\langle j| .
$$

The entropy does only depend on the state's eigenvalue, thus, in order to maximize the entropy, we are allowed to consider the entropy $H$ as a function mapping $\rho$ 's eigenvalues $\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{d}\right) \in[0,1]^{d}$ to $\mathbb{R}$. Consequently, we have to maximize the function $H\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{d}\right)$ under the constraint $p_{1}+\ldots+p_{d}=1$. This is usually done using Lagrange multipliers. One gets $p_{j}=1 / d$ for all $j=1, \ldots, d$ and therefore,

$$
\rho=\frac{1}{d} \operatorname{id}_{\mathcal{H}}
$$

(this is the completely mixed state). This description of the state uniquely characterizes the state independently of the choice of the basis the matrix above refers to since the identity $\operatorname{id}_{\mathcal{H}}$ is unaffected by similarity transformations. This proves that $\rho$ is the only state that maximizes the entropy. The immediate observation that

$$
S(\rho)=\log _{2} d
$$

concludes the proof.
Lemma 6.3.7. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be two Hilbert spaces and let $d:=\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{H}_{A}$. Then,

$$
\left|H(A \mid B)_{\rho}\right| \leq \log _{2}(d)
$$

Proof. Use Lemma 6.3.6 to get

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho} \leq H(A)_{\rho} \leq \log _{2}(d)
$$

and Lemma 6.3.3 to get

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}=H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B C}}=-H(A \mid C)_{\rho_{A B C}} \geq-\log (d)
$$

where $\rho_{A B C}$ is a purification of $\rho_{A B}$.
Lemma 6.3.8. Let $\mathcal{H}_{X}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be Hilbert spaces, $\{|x\rangle\}_{z}$ be a complete orthonormal basis in $\mathcal{H}_{X}$ and let $\rho_{X B}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ which is classical with respect to $\{|x\rangle\}_{x}$. Then,

$$
H(X \mid B)_{\rho} \geq 0
$$

which means that the entropy of a classical system is non-negative.
Proof. Let $\mathcal{H}_{X^{\prime}}$ be a Hilbert space isomorphic to $\mathcal{H}_{X}$ and let $\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes$ $\mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{X^{\prime}}$ defined by

$$
\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}:=\sum_{x, j} P_{X}(x) \rho_{B}^{(x)} \otimes|x\rangle\langle x| \otimes|x\rangle\langle x| .
$$

Hence,

$$
H(X \mid B)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}=H(B X)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}-H(B)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}
$$

and

$$
H\left(X \mid B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}=H\left(B X X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}-H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}
$$

According to the strong subadditivity

$$
H(X \mid B)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}} \geq H\left(X \mid B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}
$$

To prove the assertion we have to show that the RHS vanishes or equivalently that $H\left(B X X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}$ is equal to $H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}$. Let $\rho_{B X^{\prime}}$ denote the state which emerges from $\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}$ after the application of $\operatorname{tr}_{X}(\cdot)$. Hence, $H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}=H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X^{\prime}}}$. Further,

$$
H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X^{\prime}}}=H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X^{\prime}} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|},
$$

where $|0\rangle$ is a state in the basis $\{|x\rangle\}_{z}$ of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{X}$. Define the map

$$
S: \mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{X^{\prime}} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{X^{\prime}}
$$

by

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(|z 0\rangle) & :=|z z\rangle \\
S(|z z\rangle) & :=|z 0\rangle \\
S(|x y\rangle) & :=|x y\rangle, \text { (otherwise). }
\end{aligned}
$$

We observe,

$$
\left[\mathcal{I}_{B} \otimes S\right] \rho_{B X^{\prime}} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|\left[\mathcal{I}_{B} \otimes S\right]^{-1}=\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}
$$

Obviously, $\left[\mathcal{I}_{B} \otimes S\right] \in \operatorname{GL}\left(\mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{X^{\prime}}\right)$ (the general linear group) and thus does not change the entropy:

$$
H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}}=H\left(B X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X^{\prime}} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|}=H\left(B X X^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{B X X^{\prime}}} .
$$

Lemma 6.3.9. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}$ be Hilbert spaces, let $\rho_{A B}$ be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$, let

$$
\mathcal{E}: \mathcal{H}_{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}
$$

be a $\operatorname{TPCPM}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}\right)$ and let

$$
\rho_{A B^{\prime}}=\left[\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right]\left(\rho_{A B}\right)
$$

be a state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}$. Then,

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}} \leq H\left(A \mid B^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{A B^{\prime}}} .
$$

Proof. Let $|0\rangle$ be a state in an auxiliary Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{R}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}} & =H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}}-H(B)_{\rho_{A B}} \\
& =H(A B R)_{\rho_{A B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|}-H(B R)_{\rho_{A B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|} .
\end{aligned}
$$

According to the Stinespring dilation the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{R}$ can be chosen such that there exists a unitary $U$ with the property

$$
\operatorname{tr}_{R} \circ \operatorname{ad}_{U}(\xi \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|)=\mathcal{E}(\xi),
$$

where $\operatorname{ad}_{U}(\cdot):=U(\cdot) U^{-1}$ and $\xi \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. Since the entropy is invariant under similarity transformations we can use this transformation $U$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}} & =H\left(A B^{\prime} R\right)_{\left[\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \operatorname{ad}_{U}\right]\left(\rho_{A B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|\right)}-H\left(B^{\prime} R\right)_{\left[\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \operatorname{ad}_{U}\right]\left(\rho_{A B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|\right)} \\
& =H\left(A \mid B^{\prime} R\right)_{\left[\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \operatorname{ad}_{U}\right]\left(\rho_{A B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|\right)} \\
& \leq H\left(A \mid B^{\prime}\right)_{\left[\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \operatorname{tr}_{R} \operatorname{oad}_{U}\right]\left(\rho_{A B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|\right)} \\
& =H\left(A \mid B^{\prime}\right)_{\left[\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right]\left(\rho_{A B}\right)} \\
& =H\left(A \mid B^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{A B^{\prime}}},
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the strong subadditivity and the Stinespring dilation. We get

$$
H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}} \leq H\left(A \mid B^{\prime}\right)_{\rho_{A B^{\prime}}},
$$

which concludes the proof.

### 6.4 The mutual information and its properties

Definition 6.4.1. Let $\rho_{A B}$ a state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$. Then, the so called mutual information $I(A: B)$ is defined by

$$
I(A: B):=H(A)_{\rho_{A B}}+H(B)_{\rho_{A B}}-H(A B)_{\rho_{A B}}=H(A)_{\rho_{A B}}-H(A \mid B)_{\rho_{A B}}
$$

Let $\rho_{A B C}$ a state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}$. Then, the so called conditional mutual information $I(A: B \mid C)$ is defined by

$$
I(A: B \mid C):=H(A \mid C)_{\rho_{A B C}}-H(A \mid B C)_{\rho_{A B C}}
$$

We observe that the definition of quantum mutual information and the definition of classical mutual information are formally identical. Next we prove a small number of properties of the mutual information.

Lemma 6.4.2. Let $\rho_{A B C}$ a state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}$. Then,

$$
I(A: B \mid C) \geq 0
$$

This Lemma is a direct corollary of the strong subadditivity property of conditional entropy.

Lemma 6.4.3. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}$ be Hilbert spaces, let $\rho_{A B}$ a state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and let

$$
\mathcal{E}: \mathcal{H}_{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}
$$

be a TPCPM. Then,

$$
I(A: B) \geq I\left(A: B^{\prime}\right)
$$

This is an immediate consequence of Lemma 6.3.9.
Lemma 6.4.4. Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{C}$ be Hilbert spaces and let $\rho_{A B C}$ be a state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}$. Then,

$$
I(A: B C)=I(A: B)+I(A: C \mid B)
$$

To prove this statement we simply have to plug in the definition of mutual information and conditional mutual information.

Exercise (Bell state). Compute the mutual information $I(A: B)$ of a Bell state $\rho_{A B}$. You should get $H(A)=1, H(A \mid B)=-1$ and thus $I(A: B)=2$.

Exercise (Cat state). Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}, \mathcal{H}_{C}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{D}$ be Hilbert spaces of quantum mechanical 2-level systems which are spanned by $\left\{|0\rangle_{A},|1\rangle_{A}\right\},\left\{|0\rangle_{B},|1\rangle_{B}\right\},\left\{|0\rangle_{C},|1\rangle_{C}\right\}$ and $\left\{|0\rangle_{D},|1\rangle_{D}\right\}$, respectively. Then, the so called cat state is defined the pure state

$$
|\psi\rangle:=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|0\rangle_{A}|0\rangle_{B}|0\rangle_{C}|0\rangle_{D}+|1\rangle_{A}|1\rangle_{B}|1\rangle_{C}|1\rangle_{D}\right)
$$

Hence $\rho_{A B C D}=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ is the corresponding density matrix. Compute the expressions $I(A: B), I(A: B \mid C), I(A: B \mid C D)$ and $I(A: B C D)$. During your calculations you should get

$$
\begin{array}{r}
H(A)_{\rho}=H(B)_{\rho}=H(C)_{\rho}=H(D)_{\rho}=1, \\
H(A B)_{\rho}=H(A C)_{\rho}=1, \\
H(A B C)_{\rho}=H(D)_{\rho}=1, \\
H(A B C D)_{\rho}=0 .
\end{array}
$$

## 7 Supplement: Resource inequalities

This section contains a more detailed and more formal treatment of the material presented during the last few weeks of the lecture. The treatment is motivated by relatively recent research results and is therefore not covered by standard textbooks on quantum information theory.

For the exam, the material presented during the lecture as well as the exercises are relevant. This section of the script can be considered as a supplement (and is therefore not required for the exam).

### 7.1 Resources

We are considering dynamics in discrete time from a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}^{(\mathrm{in})}$ to a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}^{\text {(out) }}$ with initial data $\rho^{\text {(in) }}$ and final data $\rho^{\text {(out) }}$. By dynamics in discrete time we mean that the system's propagator is only defined for certain discrete points $\left\{t_{0}, t_{1}, \ldots\right\}$ in time. At the initial time $N$ parties $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{N}$ (usually called Alice, Bob, Eve, ...) are observers on Hilbert spaces $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{j}^{(\mathrm{in})}\right\}_{j}$ which compose $\mathcal{H}^{(\mathrm{in})}$ in terms of a tensor product $\mathcal{H}^{(\mathrm{in})}=\mathcal{H}_{1}^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{N}^{(\mathrm{in})}$. At the final time the $N$ parties $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{N}$ are observers on Hilbert spaces $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{j}^{(\text {out })}\right\}_{j}$ which compose $\mathcal{H}^{(\text {out })}$ in terms of a tensor product $\mathcal{H}^{(\text {out })}=$ $\mathcal{H}_{1}^{(\text {out })} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{N}^{\text {(out) }}$. Hence, a party $A_{k}$ sees the state

$$
\operatorname{tr}_{\mathcal{H}_{1}^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \hat{\mathcal{H}}_{k}^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{N}^{(\mathrm{in})}} \rho^{(\mathrm{in})}=: \rho_{k}^{(\mathrm{in})}
$$

(the hat means "ignore this quantity") at the initial time and

$$
\operatorname{tr}_{\mathcal{H}_{1}^{\text {(out) })}} \otimes \ldots \otimes \hat{\mathcal{H}}_{k}^{\text {(out) })} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{N}^{\text {(out) }} \rho^{(\text {out })}=: \rho_{k}^{\text {(out) }}
$$

at the final time. We can generalize the situation even further by the introduction of a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}$ which describes degrees of freedom that are not seen by any of the parties (e.g., the Hilbert space associated to the physically real optical fibers that transmit qubits from Alice to Bob or a device that stores qubits and which is not accessible by any of the parties). Consequently,

$$
\mathcal{H}^{(\mathrm{in})}=\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{1}^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{N}^{(\mathrm{in})}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{H}^{\text {(out) }}=\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{1}^{\text {(out) }} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{N}^{\text {(out) }}
$$

We will refer to the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}$ as the memory of the resource. Next we are introducing some quite cumbersome definitions before we will then come back to the situation which we have just described.

Definition 7.1.1. Let $I=\{0,1,2, \ldots, T\}, \bar{I}=\{0,1,2, \ldots, T+1\}$ and let $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I},\left\{\mathcal{H}_{t}\right\}_{t \in \bar{I}}$ be Hilbert spaces. Then a resource $R$ is a family $\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$ of trace preserving completely positive maps

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t+1}^{\prime}\right)
$$

for all $t \in I$. The elements $\mathcal{E}_{j}$ of the family $\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$ are called preresources.
Note that we haven't imposed any restrictions on the Hilbert spaces involved in the definition of resources and that a resource is a set of maps that does not specify the parties and the memory of the resource which are involved in the process. The parties and the memory of the resource can be specified separately by specific partial traces on $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t}\right)$ and $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t+1}^{\prime}\right)$, respectively. Usually (when considering $N$ parties and a memory of the resource) one assumes that the Hilbert spaces $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$ are of the form $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}} \otimes\left(\otimes_{i=1}^{N} \mathcal{H}_{i, t}\right)$ where these Hilbert space factors are associated to the $N$ parties and the memory of the resource in the obvious way.

A resource itself hasn't any immediate meaning; it's simply a family of separate trace preserving CPMs. But we will see below how we can use so called protocols to connect the separate trace preserving CPMs (i.e., the preresources) of a resource to get a trace preserving CPM from a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{t=0}^{\prime}$ (corresponds to $\mathcal{H}^{(\mathrm{in})}$ ) to a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{t=T+1}^{\prime}$ (corresponds to $\mathcal{H}^{(\text {out })}$ ). Before we get to the definition of protocols we are having a look at how we can use resources to define new resources by their serial and parallel combinations.

Definition 7.1.2. Let $R^{(1)}=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(1)}\right\}_{t \in I}$ and $R^{(2)}=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(2)}\right\}_{t \in I}$ be two resources. Then the parallel composition $R^{(1)} \otimes R^{(2)}$ is the resource $\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(1)} \otimes \mathcal{E}_{t}^{(2)}\right\}_{t \in I}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(1)} \otimes \mathcal{E}_{t}^{(2)}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t}^{(1)} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{t}^{(2)}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t+1}^{\prime(1)} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{t+1}^{\prime(2)}\right)
$$

for all $t \in I$.
Definition 7.1.3. Let $R^{(1)}=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(1)}\right\}_{t \in I}$ and $R^{(2)}=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(2)}\right\}_{t \in I}$ be two resources. Then the serial composition $R^{(1)} \circ R^{(2)}$ is the resource $\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(1)} \circ \mathcal{E}_{t}^{(2)}\right\}_{t \in I}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t}^{(1)} \circ \mathcal{E}_{t}^{(2)}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t}^{(2)}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t+1}^{\prime(1)}\right)
$$

for all $t \in I$.
Now it is time to state the fundamental definition of protocols.
Definition 7.1.4. Let $I=\{0, \ldots, T\}, \bar{I}=\{1, \ldots, T+1\}$ and let $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{i}^{M}\right\}_{i=1}^{N}$ (" $M$ " stands for $"$ memory" $),\left\{\mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}\right\}_{t \in I, i=1, \ldots, N},\left\{\mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}\right\}_{t \in I, i=1, \ldots, N},\left\{\mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}\right\}_{t \in \bar{I}, i=1, \ldots, N}$ and $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}\right\}_{t \in \bar{I}, i=1, \ldots, N}$
be five families of Hilbert spaces. The index " $i$ " makes clear to which party " $i$ " a specific Hilbert space is associated to. Then a protocol $\Pi$ is a family

$$
\left\{\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}\right\}_{t \in I}
$$

of trace preserving CPMs

$$
\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\bigotimes_{i} \mathcal{H}_{i}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\bigotimes_{i} \mathcal{H}_{i}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}\right)
$$

and

$$
\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{b})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\bigotimes_{i} \mathcal{H}_{i}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \mathrm{in})}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\bigotimes_{i} \mathcal{H}_{i}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{i, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}\right)
$$

which act separately (or "locally") with respect to the $N$ parties and their corresponding memory Hilbert spaces $\left\{\mathcal{H}_{i}^{M}\right\}_{i=1}^{N}$, i.e.,

$$
\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}=\pi_{1, t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \pi_{N, t}^{(\mathrm{a})}
$$

and

$$
\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{b})}=\pi_{1, t}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \pi_{N, t}^{(\mathrm{b})},
$$

where

$$
\pi_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{a})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{out})}\right)
$$

and

$$
\pi_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \mathrm{out})}\right)
$$

for all $j \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$.
Note that each protocol is a special case of a resource (you simply have to redefine the time index) which acts locally with respect to the parties and their memory.

Definition 7.1.5. Let $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$,

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{t}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{t+1}^{\prime}\right)
$$

be a resource and let $\Pi=\left\{\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}\right\}_{t \in I}, \pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}=\pi_{1, t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \pi_{N, t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{b})}=\pi_{1, t}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \ldots \otimes \pi_{N, t}^{(\mathrm{b})}$ with

$$
\pi_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{a})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}\right)
$$

and

$$
\pi_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{j}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}\right)
$$

be a protocol. The resource $R$ and the protocol $\Pi$ are compatible if it is possible to compose the equal-time elements $\mathcal{E}_{t}, \pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}$ and $\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{b})}$ in the form

$$
\left(\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ \Omega_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})} \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{t} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\Pi, M}\right) \circ \Omega_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \circ\left(\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right)
$$

for all times $t \in I$. The map $\mathcal{I}_{\Pi, M}$ denotes the identity map on $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{1}^{M} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{H}_{n}^{M}\right)$. The maps $\Omega_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}$ and $\Omega_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}$ are isomorphisms which shuffle the Hilbert spaces in the tensor products such that we can apply the subsequent maps meaningfully (isomorphisms of this kind won't be written out explicitly in the remainder of the script because the expressions would become too cumbersome otherwise). The resulting family

$$
\Pi(R):=\left\{\left(\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ \Omega_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})} \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{t} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\Pi, M}\right) \circ \Omega_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \circ\left(\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right)\right\}_{t \in I}
$$

of trace preserving CPMs defines a new resource which is called the ordinary pairing between the protocol $\Pi$ and the resource $R$.

The ordinary pairing between protocols and resources has the property that the number of preresources in the resulting resource is equal to the number of preresources in the initial resource. Nothing prohibits us to go even a step further and define pairings which are extraordinary in the sense that we use special kinds of protocols to glue groups of preresources in the initial resource together. The number of preresources in the resulting resource is not anymore equal to the number of preresources in the initial resource in the case of extraordinary pairings. The next definition of "implementations" makes clearer what we mean by "glueing together preresources". Implementations are extraordinary pairings which glue all the preresources in a resource together to a single preresource. The resulting resource thus contains only a single preresource. An implementation is consequently a trace preserving CPM. We conclude that (in contrast to arbitrary resources) implementations have direct physical interpretations in the sense that they define processes that are physically meaningful.
Definition 7.1.6. Let $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$ be a resource and let $\Pi=\left\{\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}\right\}_{t \in I}$ be a protocol (compatible with the resource $R$ ) with the property that $\mathcal{H}_{j, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}=\mathcal{H}_{j, t+1}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}$ for all $j \in$ $\{1, \ldots N\}$ and all times $t \in I$. Then the preresources contained in the pairing $\Pi(R)$ can all be composed to get a single CPM

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Im \Pi(R):= & \left(\pi_{T+1}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\pi, M}\right) \circ\left(\pi_{T}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\pi_{T}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ \\
& \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{T-1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\pi, M}\right) \circ \ldots \circ\left(\pi_{1}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{0} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\pi, M}\right) \circ\left(\pi_{0}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that we have omitted the isomorphisms shuffling the tensor space factors in this expression. The trace preserving CPM $\Im \Pi(R)$ is called implementation of the resource $R$ and describes a process with no interaction with the parties during the times between $t=0$ and $t=T+1$; it takes an input at time $t=0$ and generates an output at time $t=T+1$.

Figure 7.1 is an illustration of a preresource emerging in the ordinary pairing between a resource and a protocol.
Example 7.1.7 (Source of entangled qubits). Consider a system with state $\rho_{A}^{(i n)} \otimes \rho_{B}^{(i n)} \in$ $\mathcal{S}\left(\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{A} \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{B}\right)$ at time $t_{0}$. First, we are going to define a resource $R$ and second, we will state


Figure 7.1: Illustration of a preresource emerging in the ordinary pairing between a resource and a protocol in case of the participation of two parties "A" (Alice) and "B" (Bob). The protocol has local memories $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{M}$. The degrees of freedom associated with the resource are encoded in terms of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}, M}$.
a protocol $\Pi$ (which is compatible to $R$ ), such that the pairing $\Pi(R)$ is a trace preserving CPM which describes the distribution of $r$ entangled qubits to two parties called Alice and Bob and to which the input states $\rho_{A}^{(i n)}$ and $\rho_{B}^{(i n)}$ are associated to. The involved Hilbert spaces are displayed in the table 7.1.

We set $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\right\}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t_{0}}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{t_{0}+1}^{\prime}\right)
$$

such that

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}(\rho)= \begin{cases}\frac{1}{2^{r}} \sum_{i, j \in\{0,1\}^{r}}|i\rangle\langle j| \otimes|i\rangle\langle j|, & \text { if } \rho=|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0|, \\ |0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0|, & \text { otherwise } .\end{cases}
$$

Now let us define the protocol $\Pi=\left\{\pi_{t_{0}}^{(a)}, \pi_{t_{0}+1}^{(b)}\right\}$, such that (recall that a protocol must act

Table 7.1: The involved Hilbert spaces

| Alice | Bob |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ | $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{M}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ |
| $\mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{a,in})}=\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{A}$ | $\mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}=\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{B}$ |
| $\mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ | $\mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ |
| $\mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ | $\mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text {, })}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ |
| $\mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}=\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{A} \otimes\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ | $\mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}=\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{B} \otimes\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ |
| $\mathcal{H}_{t_{0}}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r} \otimes\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ | $\mathcal{H}_{t_{0}+1}^{\prime}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r} \otimes\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ |

locally with respect to the parties)

$$
\pi_{t_{0}}^{(a)}=\pi_{A, t_{0}}^{(a)} \otimes \pi_{B, t_{0}}^{(a)}
$$

with

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
\pi_{\sharp, t_{0}}^{(a)}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\sharp}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{\sharp}^{(a, i n)}\right) & \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\sharp}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{\sharp, t_{0}}^{(a, \text { out })}\right) \\
& \rho_{\sharp, t_{0}}^{M} \otimes \rho_{\sharp}^{(i n)} & \mapsto \rho_{\sharp}^{(\text {in })} \otimes(|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0|)
\end{array}
$$

(with $\sharp=A$ or $B$ and linear extension to the whole Hilbert space), i.e., in the first part of the protocol we copy Alice's and Bob's input states into the corresponding memories. The second part

$$
\pi_{t_{0}+1}^{(b)}=\pi_{A, t_{0}+1}^{(b)} \otimes \pi_{B, t_{0}+1}^{(b)}
$$

of the protocol is defined as

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\pi_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{(b)}: & \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\sharp}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{(b, i n)}\right) & \rightarrow & \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\sharp}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{(b, \text { out })}\right) \\
& \rho_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{M} \otimes \rho_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{\prime} & \mapsto & \mapsto \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes\left(\rho_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{M} \otimes \rho_{\sharp, t_{0}+1}^{\prime}\right)
\end{array}
$$

(with $\sharp=A$ or $B$ and linear extension to the whole Hilbert space), i.e., the second part of the protocol copies the states in the memory back to the Hilbert space which is directly accessible by Alice and Bob. Hence, the resource $R$ and the protocol $\Pi$ are compatible and the paring $\Pi(R)$ is the $C P M$

$$
\begin{array}{rlll}
\Pi(R): & \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}}^{(a, \text { in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}}^{(a, \text { in })}\right) & \rightarrow & \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}+1}^{(b, \text { out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}+1}^{(b, \text { out })}\right) \\
& \rho_{A}^{M} \otimes \rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes \rho_{B}^{M} \otimes \rho_{B}^{(i n)} & & \\
& \mapsto \sum_{i, j \in\{0,1\}^{r}}|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes(|i\rangle\langle j| \otimes & \left.\rho_{A}^{(\text {in })}\right) & \otimes|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes\left(|i\rangle\langle j| \otimes \rho_{B}^{(\text {in })}\right)
\end{array}
$$

(with linear extension to the whole Hilbert space). We thus observe (after having traced out the spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M}$ and $\left.\mathcal{H}_{B}^{M}\right)$ that the trace preserving $C P M \Pi(R)$ describes the distribution of $r$ entangled qubits to Alice and Bob. Further, we could have redefined $\pi_{t+1}^{(b)}$ as $\operatorname{tr}_{\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M}} \circ$ $\operatorname{tr}_{\mathcal{H}_{B}^{M}} \circ \pi_{t+1}^{(b)}$. In this case we end up with the system's total state

$$
\sum_{i, j \in\{0,1\}^{r}}|i\rangle\langle j| \otimes \rho_{A}^{(i n)} \otimes|i\rangle\langle j| \otimes \rho_{B}^{(i n)}
$$

after the application of $\Pi(R)$. The resource $R$ is consequently a resource which can be used to describe the distribution of $r$ entangled qubits between two parties. Because of the frequent use of this resource one defines a symbol for $R$ :

$$
0 \stackrel{r}{\mu} 0:=R \text {. }
$$

Example 7.1.8 (Source of entangled classical bits). Consider a system with state $\rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes$ $\rho_{B}^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A, t_{0}}^{\prime} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t_{0}}^{\prime}\right)$ at time $t_{0}$. Assume we would like to define a resource $R$ together with a compatible protocol $\Pi$ such that the pairing $\Pi(R)$ is an implementation describing the distribution of $r$ completely correlated classical qubits to two parties called Alice and Bob and to which the input states $\rho_{A}^{(i n)}$ and $\rho_{B}^{(i n)}$ are associated to. To that purpose we can proceed exactly as in the previous example with the only difference that we have to replace the definition of $\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}$. A pair of completely correlated classical bits are two qubit states $\rho \in \mathbb{C}^{2} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{2}$ which are classical with respect to the computational basis, i.e.,

$$
\rho=p|0\rangle\langle 0|+(1-p)|1\rangle\langle 1| .
$$

This is the kind of two-qubit states we intend to distribute to Alice and Bob. Consequently, the $\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}$ can be defined as

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}(\rho)=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
\frac{1}{2^{r}} \sum_{i \in\{0,1\}^{r}}|i\rangle\langle i| \otimes|i\rangle\langle i|, & \text { if } \rho=|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0|, \\
|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0|, & \text { otherwise } .
\end{array} .\right.
$$

If one proceeds as in the previous example one gets a trace preserving CPM which describes the distribution of r completely correlated classical bits to Alice and Bob. Because of the frequent use of this resource one defines a symbol for this resource:

$$
\circ \stackrel{r}{\longleftrightarrow} \circ:=R .
$$

Example 7.1.9 (Quantum channel). Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ be Hilbert spaces related to two parties called Alice and Bob and suppose Alice transmits $r$ qubits to Bob. This process can be formulated in terms of a resource as follows. Set $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(o u t)}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {out })}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and define the resource $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\right\}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {out })}\right)
$$

by

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\left(\rho_{A}^{(i n)} \otimes \rho_{B}^{(i n)}\right):=|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes \rho_{A}^{(i n)}
$$

for arbitrary states $\rho_{A}^{(i n)} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}^{(i n)}$ and $\rho_{B}^{(i n)} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(i n)}$. Note that we don't need any local processes to describe the transmission of qubits and thus, we don't need to define a protocol (which would act as the identity map). Because of the frequent use of this resource one defines a symbol for this resource:

$$
\stackrel{r}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ:=R .
$$

Example 7.1.10 (Classical channel). Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ be Hilbert spaces related to two parties called Alice and Bob and suppose Alice transmits r classical bits (i.e., r qubit states which are classical with respect to the computational basis) to Bob. This process can be formulated in terms of a resource as follows. Set $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {out ) }}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {out })}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and define the resource $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\right\}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {out })}\right)
$$

by

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\left(\rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes \rho_{B}^{(\text {in })}\right):=|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes\left(\sum_{i \in\{0,1\}^{r}}|i\rangle\langle i| \otimes \rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes|i\rangle\langle i|\right)
$$

for arbitrary states $\rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}^{(i n)}$ and $\rho_{B}^{(i n)} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(i n)}$. Note that in case of an input state $\rho_{A}^{(i n)}$ which is classical with respect to the basis $\{|i\rangle\}_{i}$ the application of this resource leads to the perfect transmission of the state $\rho_{A}^{(i n)}$ to Bob as demanded. Again we don't need any local processes to describe the transmission of classical bits and thus, we don't need to define a protocol. Because of the frequent use of this resource one defines a symbol for this resource:

$$
\circ \xrightarrow{r} \circ:=R \text {. }
$$

Example 7.1.11 (noisy quantum channel). Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ be Hilbert spaces related to two parties called Alice and Bob and suppose Alice transmits $r$ qubits to Bob through a noisy quantum channel. This process can be formulated in terms of a resource as follows. Set $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(o u t)}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(o u t)}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and define the resource $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\right\}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {out })}\right)
$$

by

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\left(\rho_{A}^{(i n)} \otimes \rho_{B}^{(i n)}\right):=|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes \mathcal{F}\left(\rho_{A}^{(i n)}\right)
$$

for arbitrary states $\rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {in })}$ and $\rho_{B}^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}$. The map $\mathcal{F}:\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r} \rightarrow\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ is the trace preserving CPM which describes the noise of the specific quantum channel. Because of the frequent use of this resource one defines a symbol for this resource:

$$
\stackrel{\mathcal{F}, r}{\sim} \circ:=R .
$$

Example 7.1.12 (noisy classical channel). Let $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(i n)}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ be Hilbert spaces related to two parties called Alice and Bob and suppose Alice transmits $r$ classical bits to Bob through a noisy quantum channel. This process can be formulated in terms of a resource as follows. Set $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(o u t)}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}^{(o u t)}:=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ and define the resource $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\right\}$ with

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {out })}\right)
$$

by

$$
\mathcal{E}_{t_{0}}\left(\rho_{A}^{(i n)} \otimes \rho_{B}^{(i n)}\right):=|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \otimes\left(\sum_{i \in\{0,1\}^{r}}|i\rangle\langle i| \otimes \mathcal{F}\left(\rho_{A}^{(i n)}\right) \otimes|i\rangle\langle i|\right)
$$

for arbitrary states $\rho_{A}^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}^{(\text {in })}$ and $\rho_{B}^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{H}_{B}^{(\text {in })}$. The map $\mathcal{F}:\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r} \rightarrow\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r}$ is the trace preserving $C P M$ which describes the noise of the specific quantum channel. Because of the frequent use of this resource one defines a symbol for this resource:

$$
\circ \xrightarrow{\mathcal{F}, r} \circ:=R .
$$

All the symbols introduced in the examples above are summarized in table 7.2.

Table 7.2: Pictographic representation of frequent resources

| Classical | Quantum |
| :---: | :---: |
| $r$ corr. bits: $0 \stackrel{r}{\longleftrightarrow} 0$ | $r$ ent. qubits: $\bigcirc^{\stackrel{r}{r}} \mathrm{O}$ |
| Noiseless channel ( $r$ bit): $\circ \xrightarrow{r} \circ$ | Noiseless channel ( $r$ qubits): $0 \stackrel{r}{r} 0$ |
| Noisy channel (r-bit): $\circ \xrightarrow{\mathcal{F}, r} \circ$ | Noisy channel (r-qubit): $\stackrel{\substack{\mathcal{F}, r}}{\sim}$ |

### 7.2 A partial order in the space of resources

Our strategy is the following: First, we are defining a norm in the space of CPMs (the so called "diamond norm"), second, we are introducing a distance measure in the space of resources building on the diamond norm in the space of CPMs. Third, we are using the distance measure in the space of resources to define an equality-relation between resources (more precisely, an equivalence relation on the space of resources). Fourth, we are using this equality relation to define the partial order " $\geq$ " and fifth, we are generalizing the equality-relation and the relation describing the partial order such that they hold up to an error $\varepsilon$.

### 7.2.1 The diamond norm of CPMs

Let $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ be arbitrary CPMs from $\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{H})$ to $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}^{\prime}\right)$. The defining demand on the definition of the wanted distance measure $d(. ., .$.$) between the CPMs \mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ is that it is proportional to the maximal probability for distinguishing the maps $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ in an experiment. After our discussion of the trace distance between states in an earlier chapter it is natural to propose the distance measure

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F}):=\max _{\rho \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{H}(\mathrm{in})}\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\mathcal{F}(\rho)\|_{1}
$$

if one recalls the "maximal distinguishing probability property" of the trace distance. Up to a factor $1 / 2$ this is the maximal probability to distinguish the CPMs $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ in an experiment which works with initial states in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. But this is not the best way to distinguish the CPMs $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ in an experiment! Note that in our naive definition above we have excluded the possibility to consider initial states in "larger" Hilbert spaces in the maximization-procedure. The probability to distinguish the CPMs $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ in an experiment may increase if we "enlarge" the input Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ by an additional tensor space factor;

$$
\mathcal{H} \rightsquigarrow \mathcal{H} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{E}
$$

and apply the CPMs $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ as $\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}$ and $\mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}$ to states in $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{E}\right)$. These replacements lead to a simultaneous replacement of the output Hilbert space:

$$
\mathcal{H}^{\prime} \rightsquigarrow \mathcal{H}^{\prime} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{E} .
$$

Let us have a closer look at an explicit example to recognize that situations occur in which

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F})<\tilde{d}\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}, \mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}\right)
$$

for some Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{E}$. This shows why we discard the immediate use of $\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F})$ but use a distance measure of the form $\tilde{d}\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}, \mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}\right)$ instead. We will still have to figure out the optimal choice for the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{E}$ which will lead to the definition of the so called "diamond norm".

Example 7.2.1. Let $\mathcal{H} \cong \mathcal{H}^{\prime} \cong \mathcal{H}_{E} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2}$, define

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}: & \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{C}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{C}^{2}\right) .
$$

and set $\mathcal{F}:=\mathcal{I}:=\mathcal{I}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}}$. We are trying to show that

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})<\tilde{d}\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}, \mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}\right)
$$

We first compute the left hand sight explicitly and prove the inequality afterwards building on the explicit result derived for the left hand sight.

The left hand sight. According to the proposed distance measure $\tilde{d}(. ., .$.$) ,$

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})=\max _{\rho \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{H})}\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\mathcal{I}(\rho)\|_{1}
$$

To compute this expression we first prove two claims.
Claim 1: The distance $\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\mathcal{F}(\rho)\|_{1}$ is maximal for pure states $\rho=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|, \psi \in \mathcal{H}$.
Proof: The state $\rho$ can be written in the form

$$
\rho=p \rho_{1}+(1-p) \rho_{2}
$$

( $\rho_{1}$ and $\rho_{2}$ have support on orthogonal subspaces) whenever the state $\rho$ isn't pure. In this case we observe

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\mathcal{F}(\rho)\|_{1} & \leq p\left\|\mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{1}\right)-\mathcal{F}\left(\rho_{1}\right)\right\|_{1}+(1-p)\left\|\mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{2}\right)-\mathcal{F}\left(\rho_{2}\right)\right\|_{1} \\
& \leq \max \left\{\left\|\mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{1}\right)-\mathcal{F}\left(\rho_{1}\right)\right\|_{1},\left\|\mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{2}\right)-\mathcal{F}\left(\rho_{2}\right)\right\|_{1}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the linearity of CPMs and the triangle inequality in the first step. The application of this to smaller and smaller subsystems leads to pure states in the end. This proves the claim.

Claim 2: The distance $\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\mathcal{I}(\rho)\|_{1}$ is invariant under unitary transformations of $\rho$, i.e.,

$$
\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\rho\|_{1}=\left\|\mathcal{E}\left(U \rho U^{*}\right)-U \rho U^{*}\right\|_{1}
$$

Proof: Because of the invariance of the trace norm under unitaries,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\rho\|_{1} & =\left\|U \mathcal{E}(\rho) U^{*}-U \rho U^{*}\right\|_{1} \\
& =\left\|\mathcal{E}\left(U \rho U^{*}\right)-U \rho U^{*}\right\|_{1},
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the explicit definition of the map $\mathcal{E}$ in the second step. This proves the claim.

Together, these two claims imply that we can use any pure state $\rho=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ to maximize $\|\mathcal{E}(\rho)-\rho\|_{1}$. We chose $|\psi\rangle=|0\rangle$ where $\{|0\rangle,|1\rangle\}$ is the computational basis of $\mathbb{C}^{2}$. We get

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})=\left\|\left(\begin{array}{cc}
-\frac{p}{2} & 0 \\
0 & \frac{p}{2}
\end{array}\right)\right\|_{1}=p .
$$

Proof of the inequality. Now that we have computed $\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})$ we have a closer look at an experiment where the experimentalist implements the maps $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{I}$ as $\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}=\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}$ and $\mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}=\mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}$, respectively. We thus have to show that

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})<\tilde{d}\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}, \mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}\right)
$$

According to the definition of $\tilde{d}(. ., .$.$) it is sufficient to find a state \rho \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathbb{C}^{2} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{2}\right)$ such that

$$
\|\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\rho)-\mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\rho)\|_{1} \geq \tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})=p
$$

For simplicity, we assume $p=1 / 2$. Our ansatz for $\rho$ is the Bell state $\left|\beta_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle\beta_{0}\right|$.
Definition 7.2.2. The Bell states or $E P R$ pairs are four specific two-qubit states $\beta_{0}, \ldots, \beta_{3}$ defined by

$$
\left|\beta_{\mu}\right\rangle:=\sum_{a, b \in\{0,1\}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\sigma_{\mu}\right)_{a b}|a, b\rangle .
$$

Hence,

$$
\left|\beta_{0}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle+|11\rangle)
$$

Inserting this state in $\|\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\rho)-\mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\rho)\|_{1}$ gives approximately (for $p=1 / 2$ )

$$
0.9789>1 / 2=\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})
$$

where you may use Mathematica to diagonalize the resulting $4 \times 4$ matrix. This proves the inequality.

To summarize, we have found out that there exist situations in which

$$
\tilde{d}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{I})<\tilde{d}\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}, \mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}\right)
$$

This forces us to use

$$
d(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F}):=\max _{\rho \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{E}\right)}\left\|\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}(\rho)-\mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{E}(\rho)\right\|_{1}
$$

instead of our naive approach above. Next one asks how the distinguishing probability depends on the choice of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{E}$. To that purpose we are stating and proving two lemmas. In the final definition of distance between CPMs we will then use a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{E}$ which maximizes the probability for distinguishing the CPMs $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$.

Lemma 7.2.3. Let $\rho_{A B}$ be a pure state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and let $\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}$ be an arbitrary state on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}$, such that

$$
\operatorname{tr}_{B} \rho_{A B}=\operatorname{tr}_{B^{\prime}} \rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}
$$

Then there exists a $C P M \mathcal{E}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}\right)$, such that

$$
\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}=\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)
$$

Proof. Assume that $\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}$ is pure. Since $\rho_{A B}$ is pure (and by the assumption made in the lemma) there exist states $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and $\psi^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}$, such that $\rho_{A B}=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ and $\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}=\left|\psi^{\prime}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi^{\prime}\right|$. Let

$$
|\psi\rangle=\sum_{i} \sqrt{\lambda_{i}}\left|v_{i}\right\rangle_{A} \otimes\left|w_{i}\right\rangle_{B}
$$

and

$$
\left|\psi^{\prime}\right\rangle=\sum_{i} \sqrt{\lambda_{i}^{\prime}}\left|v_{i}^{\prime}\right\rangle_{A} \otimes\left|w_{i}^{\prime}\right\rangle_{B^{\prime}}
$$

be the Schmidt decompositions of $|\psi\rangle$ and $\left|\psi^{\prime}\right\rangle$. Without loss of generality we assume $\left|v_{i}\right\rangle_{A}=\left|v_{i}^{\prime}\right\rangle_{A}$ because $v_{i}$ and $v_{i}^{\prime}$ are both eigenvectors of the operator $\rho_{A}:=\operatorname{tr}_{B} \rho_{A B}=$ $\operatorname{tr}_{B^{\prime}} \rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}$. Define the map

$$
U:=\sum_{i}\left|w_{i}^{\prime}\right\rangle_{B^{\prime}}\left\langle\left. w_{i}\right|_{B}\right.
$$

This map $U$ is an isometry because $\left\{w_{i}\right\}_{i}$ and $\left\{w_{i}^{\prime}\right\}_{i}$ are orthonormal systems in $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}}$, respectively. Consequently,

$$
\psi^{\prime}=\left(\mathrm{id}_{A} \otimes U\right)(\psi)
$$

which proves the lemma for $\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}$ being pure.
Now let's assume that $\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}$ isn't pure and consider the purification $\rho_{A B^{\prime} R}^{\prime}$ of $\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}$. Then (according to the statement proved so far) there exists a map

$$
U: \mathcal{H}_{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_{B^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}
$$

such that

$$
\rho_{A B^{\prime} R}^{\prime}=\left(\operatorname{id}_{A} \otimes U\right) \rho_{A B}\left(\operatorname{id}_{A} \otimes U^{*}\right) .
$$

Now we simply define $\mathcal{E}:=\operatorname{tr}_{R} \circ \operatorname{ad}_{\operatorname{id}_{A} \otimes U}$ and thus

$$
\rho_{A B^{\prime}}^{\prime}=\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{E}\left(\rho_{A B}\right)
$$

which concludes the proof.
Let us come back to the question about the best choice for the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{E}$ appearing in the definition of the distance measure in the space of CPMs. Let $\mathcal{E}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{2}$ be two CPMs from $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ to $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{\prime}\right)$ and let $\rho_{A}$ be a state in $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right), \rho_{A R} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ be the purification of $\rho_{A}, \rho_{A B}^{\prime}$ be a state in $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ such that $\rho_{A}=\operatorname{tr}_{B} \rho_{A B}^{\prime}$. Because $\rho_{A R}$ is pure there exists a state $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A}$, such that $\rho_{A R}=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ and according to the Schmidt decomposition there exist $v_{i} \in \mathcal{H}_{A}$ and real numbers $\lambda_{i} \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$
\psi=\sum_{i} \sqrt{\lambda_{i}} v_{i} \otimes v_{i}
$$

According to the lemma we just proved there exists a CPM $\mathcal{G}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ such that

$$
\rho_{A B}^{\prime}=\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{G}\left(\rho_{A R}\right)
$$

The CPMs $\mathcal{E}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{2}$ act only on states in $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and thus they act on the states $\rho_{A R}$ and $\rho_{A B}^{\prime}$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{E}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{G}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{A}\right)\left(\rho_{A R}\right) \\
& \mathcal{E}_{2} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\mathcal{I}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{G}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{2} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{A}\right)\left(\rho_{A R}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We have proved in an earlier chapter about quantum states and operations that trace preserving CPMs can never increase the distance between states. We thus get

$$
\left\|\mathcal{E}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}^{\prime}\right)-\mathcal{E}_{2} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\left(\rho_{A B}^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{1} \leq\left\|\mathcal{E}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{A}\left(\rho_{A R}\right)-\mathcal{E}_{2} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{A}\left(\rho_{A R}\right)\right\|_{1} .
$$

This inequality holds for any choice of $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ and states in $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$. We conclude that the right hand sight of our the inequality describes the best way to distinguish the CPMs $\mathcal{E}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{2}$ in an experiment. Consequently, this is the best choice for the distance measure between CPMs. This distance measure is induced by the following norm.

Definition 7.2.4 (Diamond norm for CPMs). Let $\mathcal{H}$ and $\mathcal{G}$ be two Hilbert spaces and let

$$
\mathcal{E}: \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{H}) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{G})
$$

be a CPM. Then the diamond norm $\|\mathcal{E}\|_{\diamond}$ of $\mathcal{E}$ is defined as

$$
\|\mathcal{E}\|_{\diamond}:=\left\|\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{H}}\right\|_{1},
$$

where $\|\cdot\|_{1}$ denotes the so called trace norm for resources which is defined as

$$
\|\Psi\|_{1}:=\max _{\rho \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{2}\right)}\|\Psi(\rho)\|_{1}
$$

where $\Psi: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{L}_{1}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{L}_{2}\right)$ denotes an arbitrary CPM.
Next we are using this notion to define a distance measure in the space of resources.

### 7.2.2 The distance between resources

Let $R=\left\{\mathcal{E}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$ and $S=\left\{\mathcal{F}_{t}\right\}_{t \in I}$ be two resources, assume that the input spaces of the preresources in $R$ are isomorphic to the corresponding input spaces of the preresources in $S$ and assume that the output spaces in $R$ are isomorphic to the corresponding output spaces in $S$. Our goal is the deduction of the maximal probability (up to a factor $1 / 2$ ) for the distinction of the resources $R$ and $S$ in an experiment. The map

$$
\rho_{R, D}:=\left(\mathcal{E}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{D}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{T-1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \ldots \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \mathcal{D}_{1}(|0\rangle)
$$

represents the most general form how a resource $R$ can be turned into a trace preserving CPM describing a physical process without an interaction with an experimentalist (e.g., Alice, Bob, Eve, $\ldots$ ). Here $D=\{\mathcal{D}\}_{t}$ together with a memory $\mathcal{D}_{m}$ is an arbitrary resource with the only constraint that the compositions above are possible. We have omitted the isomorphisms between the compositions for the reader's convenience which would be needed to shuffle the inputs such that the maps appearing in the composition above can be applied meaningfully. The corresponding expression for $S$ is

$$
\rho_{S, D}:=\left(\mathcal{F}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{D}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{F}_{T-1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \ldots \circ\left(\mathcal{F}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \mathcal{D}_{1}(|0\rangle) .
$$

Hence, $\left\|\rho_{R, D}-\rho_{S, D}\right\|_{1}$ is the probability for the distinction of the resources $R$ and $S$ in the specific set-up described by the resource $D$. To determine the maximal probability to distinguish the resources $R$ and $S$ in an experiment we thus have to maximize $\| \rho_{R, D}$ $\rho_{S, D} \|_{1}$ over all possible realizations $D$. This defines a natural distance measure in the space of resources.

Definition 7.2.5. Let $R$ and $S$ be resources as above. Then the distance $d(R, S)$ between $R$ and $S$ is defined as

$$
\begin{aligned}
d(R, S):= & \max _{D} \|\left(\mathcal{E}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{D}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{T-1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \ldots \circ\left(\mathcal{E}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \mathcal{D}_{1}(|0\rangle) \\
& -\left(\mathcal{F}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{D}_{T} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}, \mathrm{M}}\right) \circ\left(\mathcal{F}_{T-1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \ldots \circ\left(\mathcal{F}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{D}_{m}}\right) \circ \mathcal{D}_{1}(|0\rangle) \|_{1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $\tilde{R}$ and $\tilde{S}$ be two resources for which the corresponding input and output aren't all isomorphic to each other. Then the distance between $\tilde{R}$ and $\tilde{S}$ is defined as

$$
d(\tilde{R}, \tilde{S}):=2
$$

because such resources can be distinguished with probability 1.
The reader should be warned that this "distance measure" doesn't define a metric in the space of resources because the distance between unequal resources can be zero. Hence the use of the term "distance" (which is used in the literature) may be misleading.

### 7.2.3 Definition of equality and partial order in the space of resources

Before we can define a partial order " $\leq "$ in the space of resources we need a notion of equality of resources which is different from an equality-relation which assumes equal corresponding preresources. We say that two resources $R$ and $S$ are equal, $R=S$, if the distance between $R$ and $S$ vanishes and consequently, $R$ and $S$ can't be distinguished in an experiment. Equal resources have thus always the same effect in their application (i.e., when they are implemented by the use of an implementation $\mathcal{I} \Pi)$.

Definition 7.2.6. Two resources $R$ and $S$ are called equal, $R=S$, if

$$
d(R, S)=0
$$

This equality-relation defines an equivalence relation in the space of resources. The introduction of a "partial order in the space of resources" means the definition of a relation $" \leq "$ between the equivalence classes corresponding to the equivalence relation " $=$ ".

Definition 7.2.7. Let $R$ and $S$ be two resources. Then we say that $R$ is greater or equal than $S, R \geq S$, if there exists a protocol $\Pi$, such that

$$
\Pi(R)=S
$$

### 7.2.4 Uncertain equality and uncertain partial order

In practice, it does not matter if two resources are only slightly different. Consequently, it is convenient to define equality of resources only up to an error $\varepsilon>0$ which is the maximal probability for distinguishing the two involved resources in a measurement.

Definition 7.2.8. We say that a resource $R$ is $\varepsilon$-equal to a resource $S$ if the resource $R$ lies in an $\varepsilon$-ball around the resource $S$,

$$
d(R, S) \leq \varepsilon
$$

and write

$$
R \stackrel{\varepsilon}{=} S
$$

in this case.

The definition of the approximate partial ordering ${ }^{\prime}{ }^{\varepsilon} \geq$ in the space of resources is completely similar to the definition of the exact partial ordering in the space of resources.

Definition 7.2.9. Let $R$ and $S$ be two resources. Then we say that $R$ is $\varepsilon$-greater or equal than $S, R \stackrel{\varepsilon}{\geq} S$, if there exists a protocol $\Pi$, such that

$$
\Pi(R) \stackrel{\varepsilon}{=} S
$$

### 7.3 Resource inequalities

Let $R$ and $S$ be two arbitrary resources. A resource inequality for these two resources (i.e., $R \leq S$ or $R \geq S$ ) tells us which of the two resources could (in principle) be more "powerful" than the other. Consider for example the resource inequality $R \leq S$. This tells us that we can apply some local operations on $S$ in order to get a new resource which can't be distinguished from the resource in any experiment. Such statements build up information theory and, in particular cryptography. In this subsection we are proving two specific resource inequalities connected to "quantum teleportation" and "dense coding". But first we start with a simpler resource inequality which will be used in the proof of the dense coding theorem.

Theorem 7.3.1. The resource inequality

$$
\left\{\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} o_{t}\right\} \geq\left\{0 \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\}
$$

holds iff $n \geq m$.
Proof. " $\Leftarrow$ ": To prove the implication

$$
\left[n \geq m \Rightarrow\left\{\circ^{n} \circ_{t}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\}\right]
$$

we have to define a protocol $\Pi$ such that

$$
\Pi\left(\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} o_{t}\right)=\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\}
$$

which means that we have to define a protocol $\Pi$ such that

$$
d\left(\Pi\left(\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right),\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\}\right)=0 .
$$

The distance measure $d(. ., .$.$) between resources reduces to the diamond distance between$ CPMs in the situation under consideration because each of the involved resources consists of only one preresource. Hence, the wanted protocol must satisfy the equation

$$
\left\|\Pi\left(\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right)-\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\}\right\|_{\diamond},
$$

which is obviously the case if we manage to find a protocol with the property

$$
\Pi\left(\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right)(\rho)=\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\}(\rho)
$$

for all states $\rho \in \mathcal{S}\left(\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes m}\right)$ :

$$
\rho=\sum_{i, j \in\{0,1\}} p_{i, j}|i\rangle\langle j| .
$$

It suffices to show the existence of such a protocol for the special case $n=1=m$. Now let us come to the explicit definition. The protocol is of the form $\Pi=\left\{\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}\right\}$ because the resource contains only one preresource.

Description of $\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}$. The first part of the protocol measures the input $\rho$ in the computational basis $\{|0\rangle,|1\rangle\}$ and does nothing on Bob's side. This gives the state

$$
\rho^{(\mathrm{a})}=\sum_{i \in\{0,1\}} p_{i, i}|i\rangle\langle i|
$$

up to normalization on Alice's side.
Description of $\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}$. The second part of the protocol does nothing at all. It's simply the identity map.

We conclude that the operation described by the pairing $\Pi\left(\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} o_{t}\right)$ takes the input $\rho$ and Bob sees the state

$$
\rho^{(\mathrm{a})}=\sum_{i \in\{0,1\}} p_{i, i}|i\rangle\langle i|
$$

at time $t+1$. Thus, indeed

$$
\Pi\left(\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right)(\rho)=\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{1} \circ_{t}\right\}(\rho)
$$

for all states $\rho \in \mathcal{S}\left(\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes m}\right)$.
$" \Rightarrow$ ": Next we are proving

$$
\left[\left\{\circ \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\} \Rightarrow n \geq m\right] .
$$

We are consequently assuming that there exists a protocol $\Pi$ for the LHS of the inequality such that both sides of the inequality have the same effect on any input state (on Alice's side). Especially they have the same effect on an input state $\rho_{X} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes m}\right)$ which is uniform and classical. Let $\rho_{C}$ denote the state which is transmitted by the preresource $\left\{0 \stackrel{n}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right\}$ when we apply the pairing $\Pi\left(\left\{\circ^{n} \rightsquigarrow \circ_{t}\right\}\right)$ to $\rho_{X}$. The classicality of the state $\rho_{X}$ allows us to produce a copy of $\rho_{X}$ in an external memory before time $t$. Consequently, it is possible to evaluate the mutual information $I(X: C)_{\rho_{X} \otimes \rho_{C}}$ between the states $\rho_{X}$ and $\rho_{C}$. By assumption that the protocol works

$$
I(X: C)_{\rho_{X C}}=m
$$

On the other hand

$$
\begin{aligned}
I(X: C)_{\rho_{X C}} & =H(X)_{\rho_{X C}}-H(X \mid C)_{\rho_{X C}} \\
& =-H(C \mid X)_{\rho_{X C}}+H(C)_{\rho_{X C}} \\
& =-H(C \mid X)_{\rho_{X C}}+n .
\end{aligned}
$$

The quantity $-H(C \mid X)_{\rho_{X} \otimes \rho_{C}}$ is negative because $\rho_{X}$ is classical (see the chapter about entropies). We thus conclude

$$
n \geq m .
$$

Next comes the proof of a lemma needed in the proofs of the subsequent theorems.
Lemma 7.3.2. Let the time $t_{0}$ be arbitrary and let $\tilde{t} \in\left\{t_{0}, t_{0}+1\right\}$. Then,

$$
\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\nrightarrow} \circ_{t_{0}}, \circ \xrightarrow{r} \circ_{t_{0}+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{r^{\prime}} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} \Rightarrow r \geq r^{\prime} .
$$

Proof. The inequality states that the existence of an implementation $\Pi$ with the property

$$
\Pi\left(\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\ngtr} \circ_{t_{0}}, \circ \xrightarrow{r} \circ_{t_{0}+1}\right\}\right)=\circ \xrightarrow{r^{\prime}} \circ_{\tilde{t}}
$$

implies $r \geq r^{\prime}$. Let us now consider the preresource $\circ \xrightarrow{r} \circ_{t_{0}+1}$ as an implementation $\Pi_{r}\left(\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{r_{1}} \circ_{\tilde{t}_{1}}, \ldots, \circ \xrightarrow{r_{n}} \circ_{\tilde{t}_{n}}\right\}\right)$ of a resource $\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{r_{1}} \circ_{\tilde{t}_{1}}, \ldots, \circ \xrightarrow{r_{n}} \circ_{\tilde{t}_{n}}\right\}$ with $\sum r_{i}=r$ and $\tilde{t}_{1}<\tilde{t}_{2}<\ldots<\tilde{t}_{n}$ with $\tilde{t}_{j} \in\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+1\right]$ for all $j$. The map $\Pi\left(\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\longrightarrow} \circ_{t_{0}}, \Pi_{r}\left(\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{r_{1}} \circ_{\tilde{t}_{1}}\right.\right.\right.\right.$ $\left.\left.\left.\left., \ldots, \circ \xrightarrow{r_{n}} \circ_{\tilde{t}_{n}}\right\}\right)\right\}\right)$ can be interpreted as a propagator in discrete time with respect to the times $t_{0}, \tilde{t}_{1}, \ldots, \tilde{t}_{n}$. Recall that it acts like $\circ \xrightarrow{r^{\prime}} o_{\tilde{t}}$ by definition of the protocols. Let us assume the input on Alice's side is a state $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})} \in\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes r^{\prime}}$ which is classical and uniformly distributed on $r^{\prime}$ bits, i.e.,

$$
\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}=\frac{1}{2^{r^{\prime}}} \sum_{x \in\{0,1\}^{r^{\prime}}}|x\rangle\langle x| .
$$

The classicality of the state $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}$ allows us to copy the state $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}$ to an external memory $\mathcal{H}_{D}$ at time $t$. Hence, the system is in the state

$$
\rho_{t_{0}}=\rho^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes \rho^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes|0 \ldots 0\rangle\langle 0 \ldots 0| \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{D} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A_{t}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B_{t}}\right)
$$

at the initial time $t_{0}$. The available number of bits for communication at time $\tilde{t}_{j}$ is

$$
a_{\tilde{t}_{j}}:=\sum_{t^{\prime} \in\left\{\tilde{t}_{j+1}, \ldots, \tilde{t}_{n}\right\}} r_{t^{\prime}}
$$

We define

$$
E_{t}:=I\left(D: B_{t}\right)_{\rho_{t}}+a_{t}
$$

for $t \in\left\{t_{0}, \tilde{t}_{1}, \ldots, \tilde{t}_{n}\right\}$ ( $\rho_{t}$ denotes the system's total state at time $t$ and $B_{t}$ denotes Bob's system at time $t$ ) such that for example at time $t=t_{0}$

$$
E_{t_{0}}=0+r
$$

Recall that we store the input state $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}$ in the external memory $D$. The expression $I\left(D: B_{t}\right)_{\rho_{t}}$ thus denotes the mutual information between Bob's state at time $t$ and Alice's input state $\rho^{(\text {in })}$. We observe

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{\tilde{t}_{n}} & =I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{n}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{n}}}+0 \\
& =H(D)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{n}}}+H\left(D \mid B_{\tilde{t}_{n}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{n}}} \\
& =H\left(\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}\right)+0 \\
& =r^{\prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

(recall that $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}$ is classical and uniformly distributed). Hence, it suffices to show that $E_{\tilde{t}_{n}} \leq E_{t_{0}}$ because $r^{\prime}=E_{\tilde{t}_{n}}$ and $r=E_{t_{0}}$. We are proving that $E_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}} \leq E_{\tilde{t}_{j}}$ for all $j$. The whole process is composed out of the following operations:

1. local actions on Alice's side,
2. local actions on Bob's side,
3. classical communication.

Let us check that none of these operations can increase the quantity $E_{t}$.
Operations of the form (1). These states don't change $E_{t}$ because Alice's state does not occur in the definition of $E_{t}$.

Operations of the form (2). We have proved in the chapter about entropies that local operations on Bob's side can never increase the mutual information, i.e.,

$$
I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \geq I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}\right) \tilde{\tilde{t}}_{j+1} .
$$

Hence, these operations can't increase $E_{t}$.
Operations of the form (3). During each transition $\tilde{t}_{j} \rightarrow \tilde{t}_{j+1}$ Bob's system is enlarged by a tensor factor $\mathcal{H}_{C_{\tilde{t}_{j}}}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes w_{j}}\left(w_{j} \leq r_{j}\right)$ in order to be able to receive the transmitted information during the transition $\tilde{t}_{j} \rightarrow \tilde{t}_{j+1}$. We have to prove that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}=I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j}} C_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}}+a_{\tilde{t}_{j}}-r_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \leq I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j}}}+a_{\tilde{t}_{j}}=E_{a_{\tilde{t}_{j}}} . \tag{7.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The strong subadditivity of entropies and the classicality of the communication (thus, $H\left(C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid D B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}} \geq 0$, see the chapter about entropies) imply
$H\left(C_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}} \geq H\left(C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}} \geq H\left(C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}}-H\left(C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid D B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}}=I\left(D: C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}}$.

By definition of $r_{t}$,

$$
H\left(C_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}} \leq r_{t} .
$$

We thus deduce

$$
I\left(D: C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right) \leq r_{t} .
$$

Adding $I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j}}}+a_{\tilde{t}_{j}}-r_{\tilde{t}_{j}}$ on both sides yields

$$
I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}}+I\left(D: C_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \mid B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)+a_{\tilde{t}_{j}}-r_{\tilde{t}_{j}} \leq I\left(D: B_{\tilde{t}_{j}}\right)_{\rho_{\tilde{t}_{j+1}}}+a_{\tilde{t}_{j}} .
$$

This is exactly the inequality (7.1). We thus have shown that $E_{\tilde{t}_{n}} \leq E_{t_{0}}$ and consequently, $r^{\prime} \leq r$. This concludes the proof.

Now we are ready to state and proof two of the most fundamental resource inequalities appearing in quantum cryptography.

Theorem 7.3.3 (Teleportation). Let the time $t$ be arbitrary and let $\tilde{t} \in\{t, t+1\}$. Then,
iff $m \leq l / 2$ and $m \leq k$.
Proof. " $\Leftarrow$ ": We begin with the proof of the "only if"-statement, i.e., we are proving that if $m \leq l / 2$ and $m \leq k$ then

$$
\left\{\circ_{\stackrel{k}{m}}^{\infty} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\longrightarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ_{\stackrel{m}{m}} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} .
$$

For this it is sufficient to show that

$$
\left\{0^{1} \xrightarrow[\rightsquigarrow]{\infty} o_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{2} o_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} o_{\tilde{t}}\right\}
$$

(you simply apply the algorithm described below to independent systems). According to the definition of partial order in the space of resources we have to show the existence of a protocol $\Pi$ such that

$$
\Pi\left(\left\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{2}{\longrightarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\}\right)=\left\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} .
$$

We thus have to show that there exists a protocol $\Pi$ such that

$$
d\left(\Pi\left(\left\{\circ_{\stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow}}^{\infty} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{2} \circ_{t+1}\right\}\right),\left\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\}\right)=0 .
$$

The resource $\Pi$ we are going to define is an implementation of the resource $\{0 \stackrel{k}{\rightsquigarrow} 0,0 \xrightarrow{l} 0$ \}. The two resources which are compared in the equation above thus contain only one preresource each and the distance between these two resources consequently reduces to the diamond distance between CPMs:

We will prove that for our specific resource (which is defined in a moment) the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi\left(\left\{\circ_{\stackrel{1}{m}}^{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{2} \circ_{t+1}\right\}\right)(|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|)=\left\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\}(|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|) \tag{7.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

holds for all pure states $|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ in $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)$. We have learned during our discussion of the diamond distance between CPMs that the expression $\left.\| \mathcal{E}_{( } \rho\right)-\mathcal{F}(\rho) \|_{1}$ is maximal for pure states $\rho$ (the maps $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ are arbitrary CPMs). Hence, the proof of equation (7.2) is sufficient to show that the diamond distance between the CPMs $\Pi\left(\left\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{2} \circ_{t+1}\right\}\right)$ and $\left\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} O_{\tilde{t}}\right\}$ vanishes. This will conclude the proof of the if-direction.

Definition of the implementation and proof of (7.2). The implementation $\Pi$ is of the form $\left\{\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}\right\}$, where for example
$\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}=\pi_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{a})} \otimes \pi_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{a})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}\right)$
and
$\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{b})}=\pi_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{b})} \otimes \pi_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{b})}: \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { out })}\right)$ at time $t$. The Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A, t+1}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}, \mathcal{H}_{B, t+1}^{(\mathrm{a}, \text { out })}, \mathcal{H}_{A, t+2}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B, t+2}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}$ are isomorphic to $\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes 2}$. All the other Hilbert spaces which are involved in the process are assumed to be isomorphic to $\mathbb{C}^{2}$. Alice's input state is a pure state $|\psi\rangle=\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle$. The system's total input state is assumed to be of the form

$$
\left|\Psi^{(\mathrm{in})}\right\rangle=|0\rangle \otimes|\psi\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \in \mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{in})} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{in})}
$$

for convenience.
Description of $\pi_{t}^{(a)}$. The first part $\pi_{t}^{(a)}$ of the protocol is a local (with respect to Alice) 1-qubit quantum channel which transmits Alice's input state into Alice's memory. Hence, after the application of $\pi_{t}^{(a)}$, the system's total state is

$$
\left|\Psi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}\right\rangle=|\psi\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \in \mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{out})} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t}^{(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{out})}
$$

Description of $\left\{0 \stackrel{k}{\leftrightarrow} O_{t}\right\}$. Next comes the first part of the resource which distributes a Bell pair to Alice and Bob. Hence, afterwards,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\Psi_{\text {onnoo }}\right\rangle= & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|\psi\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|\psi\rangle \otimes|1\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|1\rangle \\
= & \frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{2}}|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle+\frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{2}}|0\rangle \otimes|1\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|1\rangle \\
& +\frac{\beta}{\sqrt{2}}|1\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|0\rangle+\frac{\beta}{\sqrt{2}}|1\rangle \otimes|1\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes|1\rangle \\
= & \frac{1}{2}\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle)+\frac{1}{2}\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle-\beta|1\rangle) \\
& +\frac{1}{2}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes(\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)+\frac{1}{2}\left|\psi_{4}\right\rangle \otimes|0\rangle \otimes(-\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle),
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have expanded the state in Alice's system and memory with respect to the Bell basis $\left\{\psi_{1}, \psi_{2}, \psi_{3}, \psi_{4}\right\}$.

Description of $\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}$. Next Alice measures the state in her system and her memory with respect to the Bell basis in this two qubit system. This means that we apply the projection operators

$$
\left\{\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \otimes \operatorname{id}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}} \otimes \operatorname{id}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}}\right\}_{j=1, \ldots, 4}
$$

to the system's total state to get the mixed state (up to a normalization factor)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}= & \sum_{j=1}^{4} \operatorname{tr}\left(\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{\mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t+1}^{(\mathrm{b}, \mathrm{in})}}\left|\Psi_{\text {otmoo }}\right\rangle\left\langle\Psi_{\text {otmoo }}\right|\right) \cdot \\
& \left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \otimes \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}} \otimes \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}} \cdot\left|\Psi_{\text {otnoo }}\right\rangle\left\langle\Psi_{\text {otmo }}\right| \cdot\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \otimes \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}} \otimes \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which is classical on $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{A, t+1}^{(\mathrm{b}, \text { in })}$. We recognize that the quantity

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \cdot \operatorname{tr}_{\mathcal{H}_{B}^{M} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B, t+1}^{(\mathrm{b}, \mathrm{in})}}\left|\Psi_{\mathrm{om} s \circ}\right\rangle\left\langle\Psi_{\mathrm{ommol}}\right|\right)
$$

is independent of $j$ which leads to a uniform probability distribution that describes the classical system's state. Consequently, these coefficients are all equal to $1 / 4$ because of the normalization of the probability distribution. The system's state thus becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}= & \frac{1}{4}\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{1}\right| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle)\left(\alpha^{*}\langle 0|+\beta^{*}\langle 1|\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{4}\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{2}\right| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle-\beta|1\rangle)\left(\alpha^{*}\langle 0|-\beta^{*}\langle 1|\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{4}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes(\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)\left(\beta^{*}\langle 0|+\alpha^{*}\langle 1|\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{4}\left|\psi_{4}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{4}\right| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes(-\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)\left(-\beta^{*}\langle 0|+\alpha^{*}\langle 1|\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(the first tensor factor is a state in Alice's system and memory, the second tensor factor is a state in Bob's memory and the third tensor factor is a state in Bob's system).

Description of $\pi_{t+1}^{(a)}$. Next Alice and Bob both enlarge their Hilbert spaces form the space and transmit their states locally such that we end up with the system's state

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{a})}= & \frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{1}\right| \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle)\left(\alpha^{*}\langle 0|+\beta^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \\
& +\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{2}\right| \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle-\beta|1\rangle)\left(\alpha^{*}\langle 0|-\beta^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \\
& +\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes(\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)\left(\beta^{*}\langle 0|+\alpha^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \\
& +\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left|\psi_{4}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{4}\right| \otimes(-\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)\left(-\beta^{*}\langle 0|+\alpha^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00|
\end{aligned}
$$

(the first tensor factor is a state in Alice's memory, the second tensor factor is a state in Alice's system, the third tensor factor is a state in Bob's memory and the last tensor factor is a state in Bob's system).

Description of $\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{2} \circ_{t+1}\right\}$. The state $\rho_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{a})}$ is classical on Alice's system. We now use the preresource $\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{2} \circ_{t+1}\right\}$ to transmit the classical state on Alice's system to Bob's system. Afterwards, the system's state is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho_{\circ \rightarrow \circ}= & \frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle)\left(\alpha^{*}\langle 0|+\beta^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{1}\right| \\
& +\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \otimes(\alpha|0\rangle-\beta|1\rangle)\left(\alpha^{*}\langle 0|-\beta^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{2}\right| \\
& +\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \otimes(\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)\left(\beta^{*}\langle 0|+\alpha^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \\
& +\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \otimes(-\beta|0\rangle+\alpha|1\rangle)\left(-\beta^{*}\langle 0|+\alpha^{*}\langle 1|\right) \otimes\left|\psi_{4}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{4}\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

Description of $\pi_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}$. We define the four operators $N_{1}, \ldots, N_{4}$ by

$$
N_{1}:=\mathbb{I}, \quad N_{2}:=\sigma_{z}, \quad N_{3}:=\sigma_{x}, \quad N_{4}:=i \sigma_{y} .
$$

In the last part of the protocol Bob applies a procedure to the qubit in his memory which one refers to as "Pauli rotation": depending on the Bell state $\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle$ in his system he applies the operator $N_{j}$ to the qubit in his memory. Thinking in terms of states in the space $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\text {system }}\right)$ of density operators this means that we apply the map

$$
\left.\sum_{j=1}^{4} \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbb{I}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}} \otimes \mathbb{I}} \mathbb{( C}^{2}\right) \otimes 2 \otimes N_{j} \otimes\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right|(\cdot)
$$

which leads to the state

$$
\frac{1}{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|00\rangle\langle 00| \otimes|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| \otimes \mathbb{I}_{\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right) \otimes 2}
$$

Next Bob initializes the state in his system with $|00\rangle\langle 00|$, shrinks the Hilbert space corresponding to his system from $\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes 2}$ to $\mathbb{C}^{2}$, and transmits the state in his memory to his system. Further, Alice and Bob trace out their memories. We finally get

$$
\rho_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}=|00\rangle\langle 00| \otimes|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| .
$$

The state Bob is seeing thus really is the pure state $|\psi\rangle$. This proves equation (7.2) and thus concludes the proof of the " $\Leftarrow$ "-direction.

Proof of the " $\Rightarrow$ "-direction: We start with the proof of the implication of the inequality $m \leq \frac{l}{2}$. The proof of the inequality $m \leq k$ is done afterwards. We are considering the claim

$$
\left[\left\{0 \stackrel{\infty}{m} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\longrightarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{m}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \Rightarrow m \leq \frac{l}{2}\right]
$$

instead of the original assertion. We are allowed to do this because if we have infinitely many entangled qubits at our disposal it is easier to find a protocol to proof the inequality. Thus, putting away entangled qubits certainly doesn't facilitate our task of finding the protocol which proofs the inequality. Assume that $l$ and $m$ are integers such that the first of the following resource inequalities holds:

$$
\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{m} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{l} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{m} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{m}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ^{l^{\prime}:=2 m} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{l^{\prime}} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} .
$$

The validity of the second inequality is ensured by the " $\Leftarrow$ "-direction of the next theorem. The validity of the third inequality is obvious. The application of the lemma 7.3 .2 (thus, $l \geq l^{\prime}$ ) yields

$$
l \geq 2 m
$$

which concludes the first part of the proof of the " $\Rightarrow$ "-direction.

Next we are considering the claim

$$
\left[\left\{\circ \stackrel{k}{m} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{l} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{m}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} \Rightarrow m \leq k\right]
$$

We proceed as follows: we define the so called "squashed entanglement measure" $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A$ : $B)_{\rho_{A B}}$, observe some of its properties and apply the so gained knowledge to prove the claim. The squashed entanglement $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}}$ is defined by

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}}:=\frac{1}{2} \inf _{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime}: \operatorname{tr}_{E} \rho_{A B E}^{\prime}=\rho_{A B}} I(A: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime}}
$$

To prove the claim it suffices to prove

$$
\left[\left\{\circ_{\stackrel{k}{m}}^{\circ} \mathrm{O}_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\longrightarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{0_{\stackrel{m}{m}} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} \Rightarrow m \leq k\right]
$$

because

$$
\{0 \stackrel{m}{\rightsquigarrow} 0\} \geq\{0 \stackrel{m}{m} 0\}
$$

(one simply generates locally at Alice's side $m$ entangled qubit pairs and uses the quantum channel to transmit a qubit of each qubit pair to Bob). For that purpose we are first going to prove three assertions:

1. The preresource $\{0 \stackrel{m}{\nrightarrow} 0\}$ increases $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}}$ by $m / 2$.
2. Local operations can only decrease $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}}$.
3. Classical communication can only decrease $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}}$.

Proof of (1). Let $|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ denote the (pure) state of the system after the distribution of $m$ entangled qubits. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|} & =\frac{1}{2} \inf _{\rho_{E}} I(A: B \mid E)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| \otimes \rho_{E}} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \inf _{\rho_{E}} H(A)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|}-H(A B E)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| \otimes \rho_{E}}+H(B E)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi| \otimes \rho_{E}} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \inf _{\rho_{E}} I(A: B)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} I(A: B)_{|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|} \\
& =\frac{m}{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used that the entropy of a pure state vanishes.
Proof of (2). Let $\rho_{A B}$ denote the state of the total system before the application of a local operation. Without loss of generality we assume that the local operation acts only on Alice's system:

$$
\rho_{A B}^{\prime}=\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right),
$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ is a CPM on Alice's side. According to the Stinespring dilation there exists a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{R}$ and an isometry $U \in \operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}\right)$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right) & =\left(\left[\operatorname{tr}_{R} \circ \operatorname{ad}_{U}\right] \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right) \\
& =\left(\operatorname{tr}_{R} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right) \circ\left(\operatorname{ad}_{U} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The application of $\left(\operatorname{ad}_{U} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)(\cdot)$ to $\rho_{A B}$ doesn't change $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}}$ because $U$ is an isometry:

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A R: B)_{\left(\operatorname{ad} U \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)}=E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}} .
$$

Written out explicitly, the LHS reads

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A R: B)_{\left(\operatorname{ad}_{U} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)}=\frac{1}{2} \inf _{\rho_{A R B E}^{\prime}} I(A R: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A R B E}^{\prime}}
$$

Assume that the infimum is achieved (thus we treat the infimum as a minimum for sim-
plicity) by the state $\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}$ which we don't know explicitly. We observe

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2 E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A R: B)_{\left(\mathrm{ad}_{U} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)}=H(B \mid E)_{\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}}-H(B \mid A R E)_{\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}} \\
& \geq H(B \mid E)_{\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}}-H(B \mid A E)_{\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}} \\
& =I(A: B \mid E)_{\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}} \\
& =I(A: B \mid E)_{\left(\operatorname{tr}_{R} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}\right)} \\
& \geq \inf _{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}: \operatorname{tr}_{E} \rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}=\operatorname{tr}_{E} \circ\left(\operatorname{tr}_{R} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}\right)} I(A: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =\inf _{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}: \operatorname{tr}_{E} \rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}=\left(\operatorname{tr}_{R} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right) \operatorname{tr}_{E}\left(\tilde{\rho}_{A R B E}\right)} I(A: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =\operatorname{linf}_{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}: \operatorname{tr}_{E} \rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}=\left(\operatorname{tr}_{R} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right) \circ\left(\operatorname{ad}_{U} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)} I(A: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =\inf _{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}: \operatorname{tr}_{E} \rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}=\left(\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{I}_{B}\right)\left(\rho_{A B}\right)} I(A: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B E}^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =2 E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}^{\prime}} \text {, }
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the strong subadditivity in the first inequality. Hence, we have deduced that

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}} \geq E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\rho_{A B}^{\prime}}
$$

which concludes the proof of (2).
Proof of (3). We have to show that classical communication from Alice to Bob can never increase the squashed entanglement between Alice and Bob. It thus suffices to show that the squashed entanglement never increases in the following - slightly different - process: Alice sends classical information to Bob but keeps a copy of the classical information sent to Bob. We thus start with a state $\rho_{A C B}$ (the part " $C$ " contains the classical information) and end up with a state $\rho_{A C B C}$. We have to prove the claim

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A C: B)_{\rho_{A C B}} \geq E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A C: B C)_{\rho_{A C B C}} .
$$

Assume that there exists a state $\rho_{A C B E}$ that realizes the infimum in the definition of $E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A C: B)_{\rho_{A C B}}$, i.e.,

$$
\rho_{A C B E}=\frac{1}{2} I(A C: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B C E}} .
$$

We observe

$$
\begin{aligned}
I(A C: B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B C E}} & =-H(B \mid A C E)_{\rho_{A B C E}}+H(B \mid E)_{\rho_{A B C E}} \\
& \geq-H(B \mid A C E)_{\rho_{A B C E}}+H(B \mid E C)_{\rho_{A B C E}} \\
& =-H(B C \mid A C E)_{\rho_{A B C E}}+H(B C \mid E C)_{\rho_{A B C E}} \\
& =I(A C: B C \mid C E) \\
& \geq 2 E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A C: B C)_{\rho_{A C B C}},
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the strong subadditivity and the fact that the doubling of classical information doesn't change the entropy. Hence, we have shown that

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A C: B)_{\rho_{A C B}} \geq E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A C: B C)_{\rho_{A C B C}},
$$

which concludes the proof of (3).
According to the assumed resource inequality there exists a protocol $\Pi$ such that

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\Pi\left(\left\{\mathrm{o}_{\left.\left.\substack{k} \mathrm{O}_{t}, \mathrm{\circ} \xrightarrow{l} \mathrm{o}_{t+1}\right\}\right)}\right.\right.}=E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\left\{\mathrm{o}_{\left.\substack{m} \mathrm{o}_{\hat{t}}\right\}} .\right.} .
$$

According to what we have proved so far,

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\Pi\left(\left\{\stackrel{o}{l}_{\left.\left.\substack{k} \mathrm{o}_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{l} \mathrm{o}_{t+1}\right\}\right)} \leq k .\right.\right.} \leq k
$$

and

$$
E_{\mathrm{sq}}(A: B)_{\left\{0_{0}{\left.\underset{m}{n} \mathfrak{\circ _ { t }}\right\}}^{m}\right.}=m
$$

Consequently,

$$
m \leq k
$$

Theorem 7.3.4 (Dense Coding). Let the times $t$ be arbitrary and let $\tilde{t} \in\{t, t+1\}$. Then,

$$
\left\{0_{\stackrel{k}{m}} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} o_{\tilde{t}}\right\}
$$

iff $m \leq 2 l$ and $m \leq k+l$.
Proof. " $\Leftarrow$ ": We have to prove the resource inequality

$$
\left\{0_{\stackrel{k}{m}} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\}
$$

for every triplet $(k, l, m) \in \Omega:=\bigcup_{m} \Omega_{m} \subset \mathbb{Z}_{+}^{3}$, where

$$
\Omega_{m}:=\left\{(k, l) \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}^{2}:\left(l \geq\left\lfloor\frac{m}{2}\right\rfloor\right) \wedge(k+l \geq m)\right\} .
$$

Fix $m=m_{0}$. Observe that

$$
\Omega_{m}=\Omega_{\text {spline }}+\Omega_{\text {rectangle }}
$$

where

$$
\Omega_{\text {rectangle }}:=\left\{(k, l) \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}^{2}:\left(k \geq\left\lfloor\frac{m_{0}}{2}\right\rfloor\right) \wedge\left(l \geq\left\lfloor\frac{m_{0}}{2}\right\rfloor\right)\right\} .
$$

If the inequality holds for $k=\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor$ and $l=\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor$ then the inequality obviously holds for all $(k, l) \in \Omega_{\text {rectangle }}$ because we simply strengthen the resource on the LHS. Thus to prove the inequality for all $(k, l) \in \Omega_{\text {rectangle }}$ for all $m_{0}$ it suffices to prove the inequality

$$
\left\{\stackrel{\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor}{\leadsto} \circ_{t}, \stackrel{\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor}{\rightsquigarrow \circ_{t+1}}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m_{0}} 0_{\tilde{t}}\right\}
$$

for all $m_{0} \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$.

The left boundary $\partial \Omega_{\text {left }}$ of $\Omega_{\text {spline }}$ is the set

$$
\partial \Omega_{\mathrm{left}}:=\left\{(k, l) \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}^{2}: k+l=m_{0}\right\} .
$$

Note that every $(k, l) \in \Omega_{\text {left }}$ can be written in the form

$$
(k, l)=(\tilde{k}, \tilde{l})+(0, j)
$$

with $(\tilde{k}, \tilde{l}) \in \partial \Omega_{\text {left }}$ and $j \in\{0,1,2, \ldots\}$. Hence, to prove the inequality for general $(k, l) \in \Omega_{\text {spline }}$ it suffices to prove the inequality for general $(k, l) \in \partial \Omega_{\text {left }}$.

Assume that we travel along $\partial \Omega_{\text {left }}$ starting from the vertex $\left(\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor,\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor\right)$. Passing from one lattice site to the next means that we trade a preresource $\{0 \leftrightarrow \underset{\leftrightarrow}{\infty} 0\}$ for a preresource $\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} 0\}$. We conclude that the validity of the resource inequality with respect to

$$
(k, l)=\left(\left\lfloor\frac{m_{0}}{2}\right\rfloor,\left\lfloor\frac{m_{0}}{2}\right\rfloor\right)
$$

implies the validity the validity of the resource inequality for all $(k, l) \in \partial \Omega_{\text {left }}$ because

$$
\{0 \stackrel{1}{m} 0\} \leq\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} 0\} .
$$

We conclude that to prove

$$
\left\{0 \stackrel{k}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\rightsquigarrow}{o_{t+1}}\right\} \geq\left\{0 \xrightarrow{m} 0_{\tilde{t}}\right\}
$$

for every triplet $(k, l, m) \in \Omega$ it suffices to prove the resource inequality

$$
\left\{0^{\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor} \circ_{t}, \stackrel{\left\lfloor m_{0} / 2\right\rfloor}{\rightsquigarrow}{\circ_{t+1}}\right\} \geq\left\{0 \xrightarrow{m_{0}} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\}
$$

for all $m_{0} \in\{0,1,2, \ldots\}$. As in the proof of the last theorem it thus suffices to show that

$$
\left\{0^{1} \xrightarrow[\rightsquigarrow]{\circ} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} o_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{2} o_{\tilde{t}}\right\} .
$$

Likewise as before we are going o define a protocol $\Pi$ for which

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi(\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} 0, \circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} 0\})(\rho)=\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{2} 0_{\tilde{t}}\right\}(\rho) \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $\rho \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes 2}$ and thus,

$$
\left\|\Pi(\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ, \circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ\})-\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{2} 0_{\tilde{t}}\right\}\right\|_{\diamond}=0,
$$

which proves the inequality. Alice's input state is an arbitrary two-qubit state $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})} \in$ $\mathcal{S}\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes 2}$ which can be expanded in terms of a Bell basis $\left\{\psi_{1}, \ldots, \psi_{4}\right\}$ :

$$
\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{4} p_{i j}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| .
$$

Now let us define the implementation $\Pi=\left\{\pi_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}, \pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{a})}, \pi_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}\right\}$ and prove that equation (7.3) holds for all $\rho^{(\text {in })} \in \mathcal{S}\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes 2}$.

Description of $\pi_{t}^{(a)}$. In the first part $\pi_{t}^{(a)}$ of the protocol Alice uses locally a two-qubit channel to transmit the input state $\rho^{(\mathrm{in})}$ into her memory. This gives the total state

$$
\rho_{t}^{(\mathrm{a})}=\rho^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|
$$

(the different tensor factors correspond to states in Alice's memory (the space $\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes 2}$ ), Alice's system (the space $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ ), Bob's memory (the space $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ ), Bob's system (the space $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ ).

Description of $\left\{0 \stackrel{1}{\sim} \mathrm{O}_{t}\right\}$. Next we apply the first preresource which describes the distribution of the Bell pair

$$
\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle+|11\rangle)
$$

to Alice and Bob. The system's state becomes

$$
\rho_{\mathrm{o}, m \rightarrow \mathrm{O}}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{m, n \in\{0,1\}} \rho^{(\mathrm{in})} \otimes|m\rangle\langle n| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|m\rangle\langle n| .
$$

Description of $\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}$. The application of the second part $\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}$ of the protocol leads again (see the proof of the last theorem) to some sort of local (with respect to Alice) "Pauli rotation":

$$
\pi_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}(\cdot)=\sum_{k=1}^{4} \operatorname{ad}_{\left|\psi_{k}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{k}\right| \otimes N_{k} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{\mathrm{C}^{2}}}(\cdot),
$$

where

$$
N_{1}:=\mathbb{I}_{\mathbb{C}^{2}}, \quad N_{2}:=\sigma_{x}, \quad N_{3}:=\sigma_{z}, \quad N_{4}:=i \sigma_{y} .
$$

Consequently,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})} & =\sum_{k=1}^{4} \operatorname{ad}_{\left|\psi_{k}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{k}\right| \otimes N_{k} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{\mathrm{C}^{2}} \otimes \mathbb{I}_{\mathrm{C}^{2}}}\left(\rho_{\mathrm{o} \text { anoo }}\right) \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{4} \sum_{m, n \in\{0,1\}} \frac{p_{j j}}{2}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \otimes\left(N_{j}^{*}|m\rangle\langle n| N_{j}\right) \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|m\rangle\langle n| .
\end{aligned}
$$

We now insert the definitions for the operators $\left\{N_{j}\right\}_{j}$ and compute this expression explicitly to get some thing of the form (we don't write out everything explicitly because the
expression would get to cumbersome)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}= & \frac{p_{11}}{2}\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{1}\right| \otimes\left(\sum_{m, n}|m\rangle\langle n| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|m\rangle\langle n|\right) \\
& +\frac{p_{22}}{2}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes(\ldots) \\
& +\frac{p_{33}}{2}\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{2}\right| \otimes(|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|-|0\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 1| \\
& -|1\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 0|+|1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 1|) \\
& +\frac{p_{44}}{2}\left|\psi_{4}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{4}\right| \otimes(\ldots) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We are describing the remainder of the process only for the special case $p_{11}=p_{22}=p_{44}=0$ and $p_{33}=1$ to keep the expressions simple. We put a tilde over the system's state to emphasize that we are only discussing a special case:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\rho}_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{b})}= & \frac{p_{33}}{2}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes(|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|-|0\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 1| \\
& -|1\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 0|+|1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 1|)
\end{aligned}
$$

Description of $\pi_{t+1}^{(a)}$. In this part of the implementation we simply transmit the content in Bob's system to his memory. We thus get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\rho}_{t+1}^{(\mathrm{a})}= & \frac{p_{33}}{2}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes(|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|-|0\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \\
& -|1\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|+|1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|)
\end{aligned}
$$

Description of $\left\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} 0_{\tilde{t}}\right\}$. The second preresource leads to the transmission of the one qubit state in Alice's system to Bob's system. We thus get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\rho}_{\circ \rightsquigarrow \circ}= & \frac{p_{33}}{2}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes(|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|-|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 1| \\
& -|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 0|+|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes|1\rangle\langle 1|) \\
= & p_{33}\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{3}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

For arbitrary values for $p_{11}, \ldots, p_{44}$ one gets

$$
\rho_{\circ \rightsquigarrow \circ}=\sum_{j=1}^{4} p_{j j}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| .
$$

Description of $\pi_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}$. We are using the last part $\pi_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}$ of the protocol to enlarge Bob's one qubit system to a two qubit system and to transmit the total state in Bob's system and memory to the enlarged system of Bob. Further, Alice and Bob trace out their memory. We get the total state

$$
\rho_{t+2}^{(\mathrm{b})}=\sum_{j=1}^{4}|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes\left(p_{j j}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right|\right),
$$

which is exactly the state we get when we apply the classical two-bit channel $\{0 \rightarrow 0\}$ to the arbitrary input state $\rho^{(\text {in })}$ on Alice's side. These results are independent of the input state on Bob's side. This implies that the two trace preserving CPMs $\left\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\}$ and $\left\{0 \xrightarrow{2} 0_{\tilde{t}}\right\}$ have the same effect on any input state. We conclude that

$$
\left\|\Pi\left(\left\{\circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\}\right)-\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{2} o_{\tilde{t}}\right\}\right\|_{\diamond}=0
$$

and consequently,

$$
\left\{0 \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \mathrm{o}_{t}, \circ \stackrel{1}{\rightsquigarrow} \mathrm{o}_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\mathrm{o}^{2} \mathrm{o}_{\tilde{t}}\right\} .
$$

This concludes the proof of the " $\Leftarrow$ "-direction.
Proof of the " $\Rightarrow$ "-direction: We start with the derivation of the implication of the inequality $m \leq 2 l$ but consider the claim

$$
\left[\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{m} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{0 \stackrel{\infty}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \Rightarrow m \leq 2 l\right]
$$

instead of the original assertion. We are allowed to do so because if we have infinitely many entangled qubits at our disposal it is easier to find a protocol to proof the inequality. Thus, putting away entangled qubits certainly doesn't facilitate our task of finding the protocol which proofs the inequality. Assume that $l$ and $m$ are integers such that the second of the following resource inequalities holds:

$$
\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\nrightarrow} \circ_{t}, \circ^{l^{\prime}:=2 l} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\ngtr} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \stackrel{\infty}{\ngtr} \circ_{t}, \circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} .
$$

The validity of the second inequality is ensured by the " $\Leftarrow$ "-direction of the previous theorem. The validity of the third inequality is obvious. The application of the lemma 7.3.2 (thus, $l^{\prime} \geq m$ ) yields

$$
2 l \geq m .
$$

Next we are considering the claim

$$
\left[\left\{\circ_{\stackrel{k}{\rightsquigarrow}} \circ_{t}, \circ \stackrel{l}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t+1}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{\tilde{t}}\right\} \Rightarrow m \leq k+l\right] .
$$

The validity of this implication is implied by the validity of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\left\{\circ_{\left.\left.\stackrel{k+l}{\rightsquigarrow} \circ_{t}\right\} \geq\left\{\circ \xrightarrow{m} \circ_{t}\right\} \Rightarrow m \leq k+l\right]}\right.\right. \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

because

$$
\left\{0_{\stackrel{k}{\rightsquigarrow} O_{t}}\right\} \geq\left\{0 \stackrel{k}{\rightsquigarrow} O_{t}\right\}
$$

(simply define a protocol that produces $k$ entangled qubit pairs on Alice's side and use the quantum channel to send one qubit from each entangled pair to Bob). The claim in (7.4) holds because of theorem 7.3.1. This concludes the proof.

## Bibliography

[1] A. Aspect, P. Grangier, and G. Roger. Experimental realization of Einstein-Podolsky-Rosen-Bohm gedankenexperiment: A new violation of Bell's inequalities. Physical Review Letters, 49:91-94, 1982.
[2] J. S. Bell. On the Einstein Podolsky Rosen paradox. Physics, 1:195-200, 1964.
[3] A. Einstein, B. Podolsky, and N. Rosen. Can quantum-mechanical description of physical reality be considered complete? Phys. Rev., 47(10), 1935.
[4] S. Kochen and E. P. Specker. The problem of hidden variables in quantum mechanics. J. of Math. and Mech., 17:59-87, 1967.
[5] D. H. Mellor. Probability: A Philosophical Introduction. Routledge, 2005.
[6] M. A. Nielsen and I. L. Chuang. Quantum Computation and Quantum Information. Cambridge University Press, 2000.
[7] Renato Renner. Security of quantum key distribution. quant-ph/0512258, December 2005.
[8] C. E. Shannon. A mathematical theory of communication. Bell System Technical Journal, 27:379-423 and 623-656, 1948.
[9] E. Specker. Die Logik nicht gleichzeitig entscheidbarer Aussagen. Dialectica, 14(2-3):239-246, 1960.
[10] Monty Hall problem. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monty_Hall_problem.
[11] S. Wolf. Einführung in die Quanteninformatik. http://qi.ethz.ch/edu/qiHS08/. (Regular course in fall semester).


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ This connection has been noticed by numerous famous scientists over the past fifty years, among them Rolf Landauer with his claim "information is physical."

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ For a nice introduction to the philosophy of probability theory, I recommend the book [5].
    ${ }^{2}$ The situation becomes more intriguing if the quizmaster opens a door after the candidate has already made a guess. The problem of determining the probability distribution that the candidate assigns to $X$ in this case is known as the Monty Hall problem. For further reading, I refer to [10].

[^2]:    ${ }^{3} \mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{G}$ denotes the set $\{F \times G: F \in \mathcal{F}, G \in \mathcal{G}\}$. It is easy to see that $\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{G}$ is a $\sigma$-algebra over $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$.

[^3]:    ${ }^{4}$ It is easy to see that the power set of $\mathcal{X}$ is indeed a $\sigma$-algebra over $\mathcal{X}$.
    ${ }^{5}$ Note that $X$ and $Y$ can themselves be tuples of random variables.

[^4]:    ${ }^{6} P_{X} \times P_{Y}$ denotes the function $(x, y) \mapsto P_{X}(x) P_{Y}(y)$.

[^5]:    ${ }^{7}$ The definition can easily be generalized to probability measures.
    ${ }^{8}$ We use the term trace distance because, as we shall see, it is a special case of the trace distance for density operators.

[^6]:    ${ }^{9}$ It is easy to verify that $P_{X Y}$ is indeed a probability mass function.

[^7]:    ${ }^{1}$ In fact, a (deterministic) computer can only generate pseudo-random numbers, i.e., numbers that cannot be distinguished (using any efficient method) from true random numbers.
    ${ }^{2}$ An immediate implication is that there cannot exist a compression method that takes as input data $X$ and outputs a short algorithm that generates $X$.

[^8]:    ${ }^{3}$ Note that this will no longer be true for the conditional entropy of quantum states.

[^9]:    ${ }^{4}$ Note that all our statements will be independent of the actual representation of $M$. The only quantity that matters is the alphabet size of $M$, i.e., the total number of possible values.
    ${ }^{5}$ Here we interpret a channel as a probabilistic function from the input to the output alphabets.

[^10]:    ${ }^{6}$ See also (2.7).

[^11]:    ${ }^{1}$ That is, the mapping defined by (4.1) is an isomorphism between these two vector spaces.
    ${ }^{2}$ More precisely, the trace is only defined for trace class operators over a separable Hilbert space. However, all endomorphisms on a finite-dimensional Hilbert space are trace class operators.
    ${ }^{3}$ The adjoint of a complex number $\gamma \in \mathbb{C}$ is simply its complex conjugate.

[^12]:    ${ }^{4}$ The assertion can, for instance, be proved using the spectral decomposition of $S$ and $T$ (see below for a review of the spectral decomposition).
    ${ }^{5}$ Here and in the following, we will use subscripts to indicate the space on which an operator acts.
    ${ }^{6}$ Alternatively, the partial trace $\operatorname{tr}_{B}$ can be defined as a product mapping $\mathcal{I} \otimes \operatorname{tr}$ where $\mathcal{I}$ is the identity operation on $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{A}\right)$ and $\operatorname{tr}$ is the trace mapping elements of $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$ to $\operatorname{End}(\mathbb{C})$. Because the trace is a completely positive map (see definition below) the same is true for the partial trace.
    ${ }^{7}$ More generally, the partial trace commutes with any mapping that acts like the identity on End $\left(\mathcal{H}_{B}\right)$.

[^13]:    ${ }^{8}$ In quantum mechanics, the elements $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$ are also called wave functions.

[^14]:    ${ }^{9}$ Note that this density operator is pure.

[^15]:    ${ }^{10}$ In particular, if $\mathcal{H}_{B}=\mathbb{C}$ is trivial, this expression equals $\rho_{A}^{\prime}=U_{A} \rho_{A} U_{A}^{*}$.
    ${ }^{11} \mathrm{By}$ induction, this postulate can be readily generalized to composite systems with more than two parts.

[^16]:    ${ }^{12}$ If the classical system $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ itself has a tensor product structure (e.g., $\mathcal{H}_{Z}=\mathcal{H}_{Z^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{Z^{\prime \prime}}$ ) we typically assume that the basis used for defining classical states has the same product structure (i.e., the basis vectors are of the form $e=e^{\prime} \otimes e^{\prime \prime}$ with $e^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{Z^{\prime}}$ and $\left.e^{\prime \prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{Z^{\prime \prime}}\right)$.

[^17]:    ${ }^{13}$ See the argument in Section 4.4.3.

[^18]:    ${ }^{14}$ In the sense that there is less redundant information in the description of the CPM.

[^19]:    ${ }^{1}$ Already in 1926, Albert Einstein famously expressed his concerns about the completeness of quantum mechanics in a letter to Max Born with the words "Jedenfalls bin ich überzeugt, dass der [Herrgott] nicht würfelt."
    ${ }^{2}$ It has later been shown that Kochen and Specker's argument can be related to Bell-type arguments.

